

HS17JNE

2026

4th
PRIM.



Second Term



Table of contents

Module 1

Unit 1 This Is Where I Live

Lesson 1	10
Practice on Lesson 1	14
Lesson 2	16
Practice on Lesson 2	23
Lesson 3	25
Practice on Lesson 3	29
Lessons 4 and 5	31
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	35
Unit Review	37
Check Your Vocabulary	38
Writing Time	39
Student's Book Corner	40
Test Yourself 1	41
Test Yourself 2	43
Al-Azhar Corner	45

Unit 2 Our World, Our Responsibility

Lesson 1	47
Practice on Lesson 1	50
Lesson 2	52
Practice on Lesson 2	58
Lesson 3	60
Practice on Lesson 3	64
Lessons 4 and 5	66
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	69
Unit Review	71
Check Your Vocabulary	72
Writing Time	73
Student's Book Corner	74
Test Yourself 1	75
Test Yourself 2	77
Al-Azhar Corner	79
Al Adwaa Revision on February	80
Al Adwaa Tests on February	83

Module 2

Unit 3 What's in the Package?

Lesson 1	88
Practice on Lesson 1	91
Lesson 2	93
Practice on Lesson 2	99
Lesson 3	101
Practice on Lesson 3	105
Lessons 4 and 5	107
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	111
Unit Review	113
Check Your Vocabulary	114
Writing Time	115
Student's Book Corner	116
Test Yourself 1	117
Test Yourself 2	119
Al-Azhar Corner	121

Unit 4 Let's Celebrate

Lesson 1	123
Practice on Lesson 1	126
Lesson 2	128
Practice on Lesson 2	133
Lesson 3	135
Practice on Lesson 3	139
Lessons 4 and 5	141
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	144
Unit Review	146
Check Your Vocabulary	147
Writing Time	148
Student's Book Corner	149
Test Yourself 1	150
Test Yourself 2	152
Al-Azhar Corner	154
Al Adwaa Revision on March	155
Al Adwaa Tests on March	158



Module 3

Unit 5 Exploring Wonders in Egypt

Lesson 1	163
Practice on Lesson 1	166
Lesson 2	168
Practice on Lesson 2	173
Lesson 3	175
Practice on Lesson 3	179
Lessons 4 and 5	181
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	183
Unit Review	185
Check Your Vocabulary	186
Writing Time	187
Student's Book Corner	188
Test Yourself 1	189
Test Yourself 2	191
Al-Azhar Corner	193

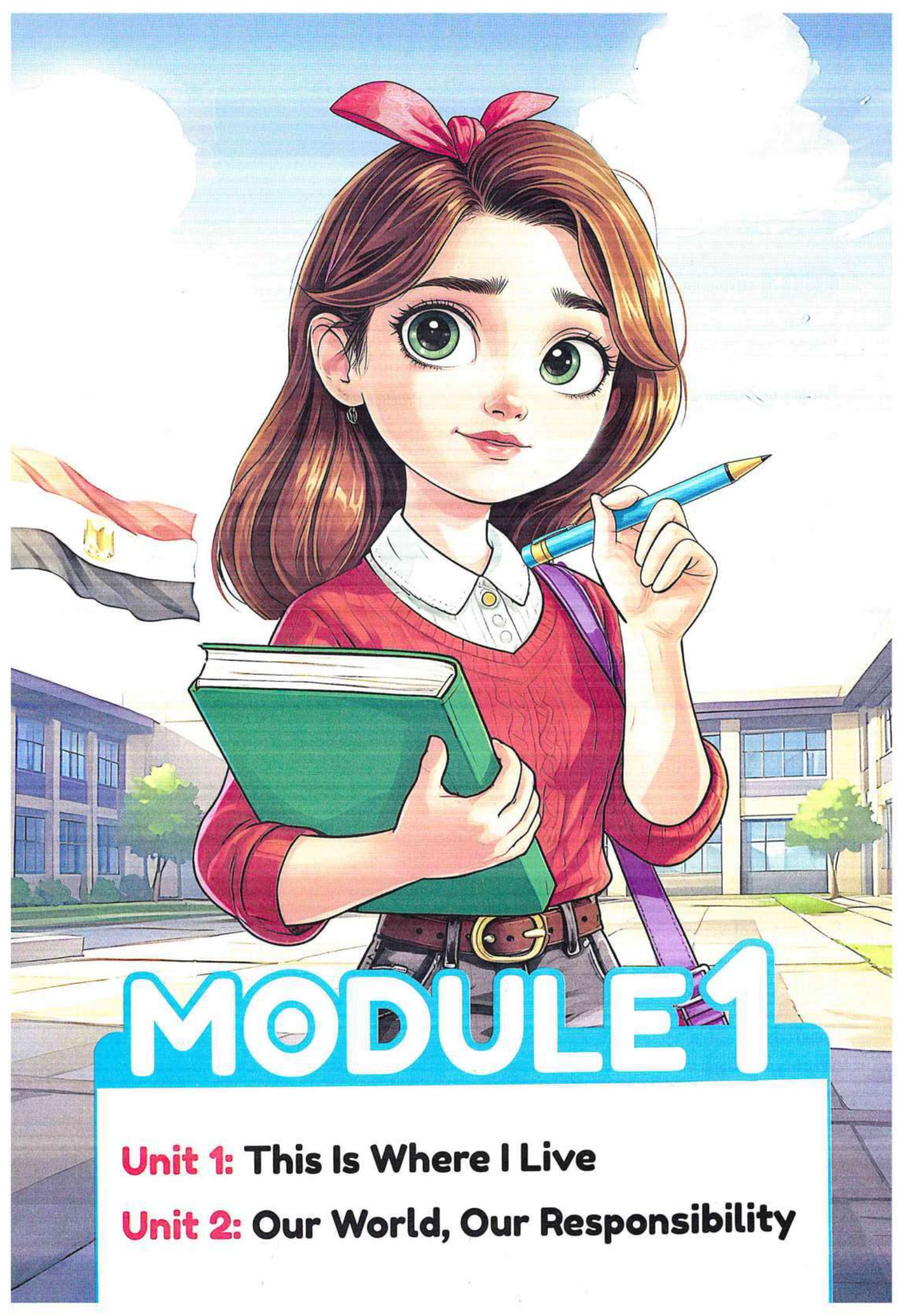
Unit 6 The Lost Kite (Story)

Vocabulary and story elements	196
Story	198
Practice - Story	203

Final Revision and Tests

Revision on Units 1 and 2	207
Revision on Units 3 and 4	214
Revision on Unit 5	220
Story Corner	224
Conjugation of Verbs	227
Final Tests	229
Al-Azhar Tests	259
Tapescripts	269
Writing Answers	273
Dictation Copybook	278





MODULE 1

Unit 1: This Is Where I Live

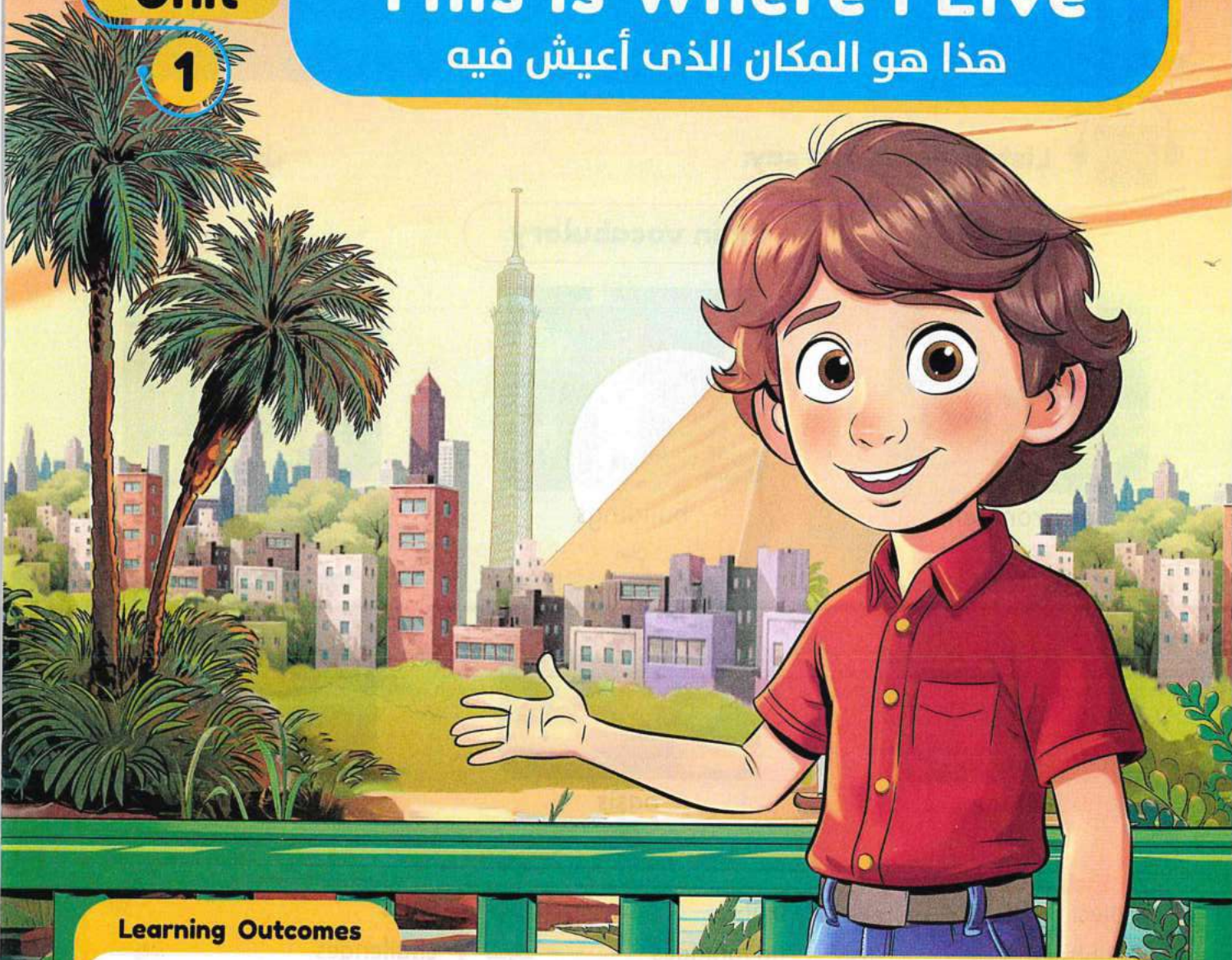
Unit 2: Our World, Our Responsibility

Unit

1

This Is Where I Live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- listen to short texts and dialogs about environments and past events.

- يستمع إلى نصوص قصيرة ومحادثات متعلقة بالبيئات وأحداث ماضية.

- identify words with silent letters (k, l) in spoken context.

- يتعرف على كلمات بها حروف صامتة (k, l) في سياق منطوق.

Speaking:

- describe different environments using new vocabulary.

- يصف بيئات مختلفة مستخدمًا كلمات جديدة.

- present short oral talks using the past simple tense.

- يقدم محادثات شفوية قصيرة باستخدام زمن الماضي البسيط.

- pronounce words with silent letters (k, l) correctly in speech.

- ينطق كلمات تحتوي على حروف صامتة (k, l) بطريقة صحيحة في الحديث.

Reading:

- read texts and dialogs about different environments.

- يقرأ نصوصًا ومحادثات عن بيئات مختلفة.

- identify main ideas and key vocabulary in context.

- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والمفردات الأساسية في سياق.

- recognize words with silent letters (k, l).

- يتعرف على كلمات بها حروف صامتة (k, l).

Writing:

- write a friendly letter about personal experiences in different places.

- يكتب خطابًا وديًا حول تجاربه الشخصية في أماكن مختلفة.

- apply correct letter structure, including greeting, body, and closing.

- يطبق بنية الخطاب الصحيح، متضمنًا التحية، والموضوع، والختام.

- use past simple tense and environmental vocabulary accurately in writing.

- يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط والكلمات المتعلقة بالبيئة بدقة في الكتابة.



Lesson 1 My Environment



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



environment

بيئة



buildings

مبانٍ



city

مدينة



village

قرية



oasis

واحة



river

نهر

Extra vocabulary

project

مشروع

tents

خيام

wells

آبار

neighbors

جيران

advantages

مميزات

challenges

تحديات

Expressions and Phrases

What about you?

ماذا عنك؟

That's interesting!

هذا ممتع!

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

finish

ينهى

finished

ask

يسأل / يطلب

asked

compare

يقارن

compared

explain

يشرح

explained

farm

يزرع

farmed

raise

يربي (للماشية)

raised

realize

يدرك

realized

adapt

يتكيف

adapted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

choose

يختار

chose

write

يكتب

wrote

know

يعرف

knew

understand

يفهم

understood

Definitions

a city	is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings هي مكان كبير به العديد من الأشخاص، والسيارات، والمباني الطويلة
a village	is a small place with few people and many farms مكان صغير به القليل من الأشخاص ومزارع عديدة
a river	is a long line of water that moves to the sea خط كبير من المياه يتحرك باتجاه البحر
an oasis	is a green place with water in the desert مكان أخضر به ماء في الصحراء
buildings	are houses, schools, or offices where people live or work المنازل، والمدارس، والمكاتب حيث يسكن الناس ويعملون
the environment	is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals كل شيء من حولنا مثل، الهواء، والماء، والنباتات، والحيوانات

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① There are many tall (animals – buildings – cars – grass) in the city.
- ② People use wells to get water in the (river – city – park – desert).
- ③ People in the (village – city – building – well) farmed and raised animals.
- ④ The Nile is a famous (building – river – forest – environment) in Egypt.
- ⑤ You can find a/an (river – village – oasis – tall building) in the desert.
- ⑥ The air, water, and land are parts of the (river – environment – challenges – advantage).

2. Fill in the blanks using the words in the box: SB املاء الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

river – city – village – oasis

- ① A is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
- ② A is a small place with few people and many farms.
- ③ A is a long line of water that moves to the sea.
- ④ An is a green place with water in the desert.

Different Places in the Environment

أماكن مختلفة في البيئة



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Maha

Hi, Salma, did you finish the project our teacher asked us to do last week?

مرحبًا سلمى، هل انتهيت من المشروع الذي طلبته منا معلمتنا الأسبوع الماضي؟

Yes, I did. I enjoyed it a lot. What about you?

نعم، استمتعتُ به كثيرًا. ماذا عنك؟



Salma



Maha

I worked on it with my cousin. We compared life in the city with life in the village. What did you choose?

عملت عليه مع ابنة عمي. قارنًا الحياة في المدينة بالحياة في القرية. ماذا اخترت؟

I wrote about the desert. I explained how people lived in tents, traveled on camels, and used wells for water.

كتبْتُ عن الصحراء، وشرحتُ كيف كان الناس يعيشون في الخيام، ويسافرون على الجمال، ويستخدمون الآبار للحصول على الماء.



Salma



Maha

That's interesting! I learned that people in villages lived simply. They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors.

هذا ممتع! علمتُ أن سكان القرى يعيشون حياةً بسيطة. كانوا يزرعون ويربون الماشية ويعرفون جميع جيرانهم.

And city life was different. People lived in tall buildings, used cars and buses, and had shops everywhere.

وكانت حياة المدينة مختلفة. عاش الناس في مباني شاهقة، واستخدموا السيارات والأتوبيسات، وكانت المتاجر منتشرة في كل مكان.



Salma



Maha

Exactly. I realized every place had advantages and challenges.

بالضبط. أدركتُ أن لكل مكان مزاياه وتحدياته.

Yes, the project helped us understand how people adapted to their environments.

نعم، ساعدنا المشروع على فهم كيفية تكيف الأشخاص مع بيئاتهم.



Salma



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Maha and Salma talked about their school project. تحدثت مها وسلمى عن مشروعهما المدرسى.
- ✓ Maha worked with her cousin on a project comparing city and village life. عملت مها مع ابنة عمها على مشروع لمقارنة الحياة في المدينة والحياة في القرية.
- ✓ People in villages lived simply. كان الناس في القرى يعيشون ببساطة.
- ✓ They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors. كانوا يزرعون ويربون الماشية ويعرفون جميع جيرانهم.
- ✓ City life was different. People lived in tall buildings and used cars and buses. كانت حياة المدينة مختلفة، عاش الناس في مبانٍ شاهقة، واستخدموا السيارات والأتوبيسات.
- ✓ Salma wrote about the desert and how people live there. كتبت سلمى عن الصحراء وكيف يعيش الناس فيها.
- ✓ She said people in the desert live in tents and travel on camels. قالت إن الناس في الصحراء يعيشون في خيام ويسافرون على الجمال.
- ✓ They realized every place had advantages and challenges. أدركوا أن لكل مكان مزايا وتحديات.

✓ Checkpoint

1. Write (T) True or (F) False:



اكتب (T) أمام العبارة الصحيحة، و(F) أمام العبارة الخاطئة.

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Salma compared life in the city and the village. ()
- ② People in the desert traveled on camels. ()
- ③ Villagers raised animals and farmed. ()
- ④ People in cities lived in small houses. ()
- ⑤ The project helped the students understand environments better. ()

2. Answer the following questions: SB

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

- ① What did people in villages do for a living?

.....

- ② How was city life different from village life?

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 People in the desert live in big houses. (.....)
- 2 Life in the city is very quiet. (.....)
- 3 Every place has advantages and challenges. (.....)
- 4 The project helped us understand how people adapted to their environment. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We life in the city with life in the village.
a) compared b) did c) finished d) traveled
- 2 Villagers animals and farmed.
a) traveled b) raised c) lived d) finished
- 3 The is everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals. **SB**
a) oasis b) village c) environment d) ground
- 4 People in the desert use for water.
a) see b) wells c) rivers d) sea
- 5 A tall can have many floors where people live or work. **SB**
a) village b) desert c) flat d) building
- 6 People in the village lived simply, and knew all their
a) challenges b) neighbors c) projects d) wells

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

busy – buildings – tents – animals – neighbors

City life is busy and full of people. There are many cars, tall (1)....., and shops. Village life is quiet. There are farms, (2)....., and fresh air. People in villages know all their (3)..... . People in the desert live in (4)..... . They use wells for water. Every place has advantages and challenges.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People live in different environments. Some people live in the city. The city is very busy and has many cars, tall buildings, and shops. In the village, life is calm. There are green farms, animals, and fresh air. People raise animals and grow food. In the desert, life is different. It is very hot and dry. There is a lot of sand, and few plants. People may live in tents or small houses.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about different
 a) forest b) sand c) environments d) shops
- 2 It is very hot in the
 a) desert b) village c) city d) forest

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do people have in the city?

- 4 What do people do in the village?

- 5 What do people in the desert live in?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 how is the weather in the desert

- 2 people work on farms and grow food

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من أربع جمل (25 كلمة) مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

"Different places in the environment"

desert – village – city



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 2

A Visit to the Village



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

forest	غابة	weather	طقس
busy (adj)	مزدحم / مشغول	path	طريق

Extra vocabulary

beside	بجانب	story	قصة	friendly (adj)	ودود
travelers	مسافرون	sellers	بائعون	quiet (adj)	هادئ

Expressions and Phrases

how clean and fresh the air is	كيف أن الهواء نظيف ومنعش	far from	بعيد عن
--------------------------------	--------------------------	----------	---------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
visit	يزور	visited	يلاحظ
walk	يمشى	walked	يستريح
smell	يشم	smelled	يستمتع
		enjoy	enjoyed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	يرى	saw	tell
find	يجد	found	يخبر
		buy	told
			يشترى
			bought

A Day in the Village

يوم فى القرية



Warm up

Did you visit a village last summer? What did you see?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير فى موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. The weather was sunny. They were excited. They walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was compared to the busy city. Omar took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water.



Ahmed **smelled**⁽¹⁾ the colorful flowers beside the **path**⁽²⁾. Not **far from**⁽³⁾ the village, they saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds. A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert where **travelers**⁽⁴⁾ could find water and rest.

In the afternoon, they went to the market and bought fresh fruit such as apples, oranges, and bananas. The **sellers**⁽⁵⁾ were friendly and told them stories about village life. Ahmed and Omar enjoyed the **quiet**⁽⁶⁾ streets, listened to birds singing, and learned many new things about the people who lived there.

(1)	شم
(2)	طريق
(3)	بعيد عن
(4)	مسافرون
(5)	بائعون
(6)	هادئ

Think

How is life in the village different from life in the city?

فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية، زار أحمد وعمر قرية صغيرة قريبة من المدينة. كان الطقس مشمسًا وكانوا متحمسين. مشوا بجانب النهر ولاحظوا مدى نظافة الهواء وانتعاشه مقارنة بالمدينة المزدحمة. التقط عمر صورًا للمنازل والأشجار والمياه الصافية، بينما شم أحمد الزهور الملونة بجانب الطريق. ليس بعيدًا عن القرية، رأوا غابة صغيرة تحتوى على أشجار طويلة والعديد من الطيور. روى لهم فلاح قصة عن واحة فى الصحراء حيث يمكن للمسافرين إيجاد الماء والراحة. فى فترة بعد الظهر، ذهبوا إلى السوق واشتروا فواكه طازجة مثل التفاح والبرتقال والموز. كان البائعون ودودين ورووا لهم قصصًا عن حياة القرية. استمتع أحمد وعمر بالشوارع الهادئة، واستمعوا للطيور وهى تغنى، وتعلموا العديد من الأشياء الجديدة عن الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ☑ Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city.
زار أحمد وعمر قرية صغيرة قرب المدينة.
- ☑ The weather was sunny, and they were excited.
كان الجو مشمسًا، وكانا متحمسين.
- ☑ Omar took photos of trees, houses, and the clear water.
التقط عمر صورًا للأشجار والمنازل والمياه الصافية.
- ☑ Ahmed smelled the beautiful, colorful flowers beside the path.
اشتم أحمد رائحة الزهور الجميلة بجانب الطريق.
- ☑ They saw a small forest with tall trees and many birds.
رأوا غابة صغيرة بأشجارها الطويلة وطيورها الكثيرة.
- ☑ A farmer told them a story about an oasis in the desert.
حكى لهم فلاح قصة عن واحة في الصحراء.
- ☑ Then, they went to the market and bought fresh fruits.
ثم ذهبوا إلى السوق واشتروا فواكه طازجة.
- ☑ The sellers were kind and told them stories about village life.
كان البائعون لطفاء وقصوا عليهم قصصًا عن حياة القرية.
- ☑ Ahmed and Omar enjoyed their trip and learned new things about the village.
استمتع أحمد وعمر برحلتهم وتعلما أشياء جديدة عن القرية.



Read again and answer: SB اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب:

1 Where did Ahmed and Omar go last weekend?

.....

2 What did Ahmed and Omar buy from the market?

.....

3 What did the farmer tell them about?

.....

Language in Use

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage: It tells us about actions that already happened.

يخبرنا عن أفعال حدثت بالفعل.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

e.g. – My family **visited** Cairo last week. – I **went** to my school yesterday.

1. Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed).

walk → walked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d).

notice → noticed

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ied).

study → studied

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن ثم يضاف (ed).

stop → stop**ped**

2. Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هي أفعال تتغير في الماضي (تحفظ) كما هي:

Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	take يأخذ	took
buy يشتري	bought	see يرى	saw
make يصنع	made	eat يأكل	ate
do يفعل	did	say يقول	said



Got it:

Lama (go) to the supermarket two hours ago.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (went) لوجود (ago) في الجملة الذي يدل على أن زمن الجملة هو الماضي البسيط.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + **didn't** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. I **didn't** watch TV yesterday.

Note

The main verb stays in the **base form** after **didn't**.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يبقى في صورته الأساسية (بدون أي إضافات) بعد didn't.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question

Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...?

Answer

Yes,
No,

subject

did.
didn't.e.g. A: **Did** you **go** to the park last week?B: **Yes**, I **did**.

OR

B: **No**, I **didn't**.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word + **did** + subject + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...?

B: Subject + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

A: Where **did** you **go** last weekend?B: I **went** to Paris.

Got it:

What did you (**bought**) yesterday?● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**buy**) لأن الفعل بعد **did** يأتي في المصدر (في صورته الأساسية).

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

- yesterday الأمس
- last الماضي (night – week – year)
- ago منذ
- in (2000)
- when I was young عندما كنت صغير
- earlier today في وقت سابق اليوم
- a few days ago منذ بضعة أيام

Remember

/d/
called

cleaned

/ld/
wanted

needed

/t/
helped

looked

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية. 📌

- ① We (visit – visiting – visited – visits) our grandpa's village last year.
- ② Salma didn't (buys – buy – buying – bought) a new dress yesterday.
- ③ Eyad (do – did – does – doing) his homework two hours ago.
- ④ They (watch – watching – watched – watches) a movie last night.
- ⑤ (Did – Do – Does – Doing) you play football last Monday?
- ⑥ Where did you (go – went – going – goes) on your last holiday?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- ① We (travel) to Alexandria last summer.
- ② I (eat) rice and fish for lunch a few days ago.
- ③ Hazem (see) a bird singing in the park yesterday.
- ④ My grandpa (plant) a mango tree in 2000.
- ⑤ They didn't (made) a birthday cake for their brother.
- ⑥ Where (do) Amira travel last year?

Quick Practice on the Past Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I many beautiful photos in the last trip.
a) took b) take c) taking d) takes
- 2 We didn't to school by bus last week.
a) going b) go c) goes d) went
- 3 Rodiana a cartoon yesterday.
a) watches b) watch c) watched d) watching
- 4 Did your sister her room last Friday?
a) cleaned b) clean c) cleaned d) cleaning
- 5 Omar beside the river yesterday.
a) walking b) walks c) walk d) walked

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Emad (go) to the club yesterday.
- 2 We didn't (visited) our grandparents last week.
- 3 I (buy) some fruits a few days ago.
- 4 Egyptians (use) simple tools in the past.
- 5 They (don't) buy fresh bread from the bakery yesterday. **SB**
- 6 Adel (find) a colorful bird in the forest yesterday. **SB**
- 7 My family (have) a picnic in the park last month.
- 8 My mother (make) a delicious cake last Monday.
- 9 Where did you (played) football yesterday?
- 10 I (does) my homework last night.
- 11 Did you (helped) your mother last week?
- 12 Our teachers (gives) us some information yesterday.
- 13 I (visit) the Pyramids when I was young.
- 14 We (see) Mr. Ali three hours ago.
- 15 Mayar (study) English yesterday.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We went to the to buy fresh fruits.
a) bakery b) market c) beach d) park
- 2 Ali the colorful flowers beside the path.
a) visited b) smelled c) rested d) walked
- 3 The sellers at the market were They told us stories about the village.
a) sad b) strong c) friendly d) busy
- 4 Ali to the birds singing yesterday.
a) listening b) listens c) listened d) listen
- 5 The city was busy, but the village was
a) noisy b) quiet c) crowded d) big
- 6 A/An is a place in the desert where travelers could find water and rest.
a) city b) sea c) oasis d) village
- 7 Last weekend, they a forest with tall trees.
a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
- 8 The was sunny and clear.
a) weather b) market c) river d) path

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

sunny – water – tall – path – weekend

Yesterday, I spent a day in the village. The weather was (1)..... and nice. I saw green farms, (2)..... trees, and animals like cows and sheep. I smelled the colorful flowers beside the (3)..... . I took photos of the houses, trees, and the clear (4)..... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Hadeer visited her grandparents in the village. The weather was sunny and warm. She woke up early and went outside to see the animals. She was very excited. She walked beside the river and noticed how clean and fresh the air was compared to her busy city. She took photos of houses, trees, and the clear water. Her grandpa told her many stories about village life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hadeer visited her grandparents in the
 a) forest b) oasis c) city d) village
- 2 She walked beside the
 a) river b) school c) house d) farms

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How was the weather in the village?
- 4 What did Hadeer take photos of?
- 5 Who told Hadeer stories about village life?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Aya (see) her friends last Monday.
- 2 My friend (walk) to school yesterday.
- 3 We didn't (visits) the Pyramids last week.
- 4 I (learn) some new information at my school a few days ago.
- 5 My mother (bake) a delicious cake last night.
- 6 Hadeer (brush) her teeth yesterday.
- 7 Adel (doesn't) go with his friends to the forest yesterday.
- 8 I (have) a great time with my family last month.
- 9 Did your father (watched) the match last Monday?
- 10 What did you (did) yesterday?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 they saw a small forest with tall trees

- 2 what did Salma do in the garden



A Day at the Riverbank



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



fisherman

صياد سمك



palm trees

أشجار النخيل



boat

قارب



sail

يبحر



riverbank

ضفة النهر



crops

محاصيل

Extra vocabulary

trip

رحلة

calm (adj)

هادئ

cucumbers

خيار

near

بالقرب من

history

تاريخ

again

مرة أخرى

Expressions and Phrases

at the end of the day

في نهاية اليوم

go home together

نذهب إلى المنزل معًا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

help

يساعد

Past

helped

Present

plant

يزرع

Past

planted

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

wake up

يستيقظ

Past

woke up

Present

catch

يمسك / يصطاد

Past

caught

wear

يرتدي

wore

sit

يجلس

sat



Warm up

Did you go on a trip to the Nile River?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip⁽¹⁾ with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat⁽²⁾. He helped his grandfather sail. The water in the river was calm⁽³⁾. Youssef saw fishermen catching fish. His grandfather showed him the green farms



near the river where farmers plant crops⁽⁴⁾, vegetables, and fruits. They also saw tall palm trees⁽⁵⁾ and children playing on the riverbank⁽⁶⁾. Youssef wore his hat because the sun was hot. They sat under a tree and ate bread, cheese, and cucumbers⁽⁷⁾. His grandfather told him stories about the history of the Nile. Youssef was very happy because he learned many new things.

At the end of the day, they went home together, feeling tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.

١

(1) رحلة

(2) قارب

(3) هادئ

(4) محاصيل

(5) أشجار النخيل

(6) ضفة النهر

(7) خيار

Think

How can we help protect the Nile River and keep it clean?

يوم الجمعة الماضي، ذهب يوسف في رحلة مع جده إلى نهر النيل. استيقظا مبكرًا وركبا قاربًا صغيرًا. وقد ساعد يوسف جده في الإبحار. كان ماء النهر هادئًا. ورأى يوسف الصيادين وهم يصطادون الأسماك. أراه جده المزارع الخضراء القريبة من النهر، حيث يزرع الفلاحون المحاصيل والخضراوات والفواكه. كما رأوا أشجار النخيل الطويلة والأطفال يلعبون على ضفة النهر. ارتدى يوسف قبعته لأن الشمس كانت حارة. جلسا تحت شجرة وأكلا الخبز والجبن والخيار. حكى له جده قصصًا عن تاريخ نهر النيل. كان يوسف سعيدًا جدًا لأنه تعلم أشياء جديدة كثيرة. وفي نهاية اليوم، عادا إلى المنزل معًا، وهما يشعران بالتعب لكنهما كانا متحمسين لزيارة النيل مرة أخرى قريبًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River.
ذهب يوسف في رحلة مع جده إلى نهر النيل.
- ✓ They woke up early and took a small boat on the river.
استيقظا باكراً واستقلا قارباً صغيراً في النهر.
- ✓ Youssef helped his grandfather sail the boat.
ساعد يوسف جده في قيادة القارب.
- ✓ The water was blue, calm, and very beautiful.
كانت المياه زرقاء، هادئة، وجميلة للغاية.
- ✓ They saw fishermen catching fish in the river.
رأوا الصيادين يصطادون السمك في النهر.
- ✓ His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river.
أراه جده المزارع الخضراء قرب النهر.
- ✓ They sat under a tree, ate some bread, cheese, and cucumbers, and listened to stories.
جلسوا تحت شجرة، وأكلوا الخبز والجبن والخيار، واستمعوا إلى القصص.
- ✓ Youssef was happy and learned many new things about the Nile.
كان يوسف سعيداً وتعلم الكثير عن النيل.



Read again and answer: **SB** اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب:

- 1 Where did Youssef go with his grandfather?
.....
- 2 What did Youssef and his grandfather do on the trip?
.....
- 3 What did Youssef learn from his grandfather?
.....
- 4 Why do you think Youssef enjoyed the trip with his grandfather?
.....

Pronunciation

Silent letters in consonants



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

Silent k

- The letter "k" is not pronounced when it comes before "n" at the start of a word.

- لا ينطق الحرف "k" عندما يأتي قبل "n" في بداية الكلمة.

knock يطرق



knife سكين



knee ركبة



know يعرف



Silent l

- The letter "l" is not pronounced in some words, especially after "a" or "o".

- لا ينطق الحرف "l" في بعض الكلمات، خاصة بعد "a" أو "o".

walk يمشي



talk يتحدث



folk قوم - ناس



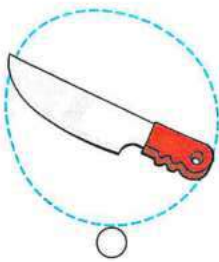
half نصف



Checkpoint

Match the word to the picture:

صل الكلمة بالصورة:



knock

knee

knife

walk

talk



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Omar went on a with his parents to the Nile River.
a) walk b) trip c) class d) car
- 2 Youssef and his grandfather took a small on the Nile River.
a) car b) shop c) house d) boat
- 3 I saw catching fish in the river.
a) teachers b) farmers c) fishermen d) doctors
- 4 The farmers plant near the river.
a) fish b) crops c) water d) stones
- 5 Adam helped his grandfather the boat.
a) eat b) take c) sail d) swim
- 6 They sat under a tree and to stories.
a) showed b) helped c) saw d) listened

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

A

sail – photos – boat – fishermen – city

Last Friday, Ali went with his father to the Nile. They took a small (1)..... and sailed on the calm water. Ali helped his father (2)..... the boat. They saw (3)..... catching fish and children playing near the riverbank. Ali was happy and took (4)..... of the blue sky.

B

catch – calm – crops – fresh – palm

I love my village. Early in the morning, the river looks (1)..... and blue. The fishermen get ready for work. They sit in small boats and (2)..... fish. On the riverbank, farmers water their (3)..... and children play near the palm trees. The air is (4)....., and the sun shines brightly.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Lama's grandparents live in a village. The village is near the Nile. It's quiet and beautiful. People wake up early and go to work on their farms. They plant vegetables and fruits. Children walk beside the river and see the fishermen in their boats. At the end of the day, families sit together to eat and rest.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Lama's grandparents live in a/an
 a) city b) village c) oasis d) town
- 2 The village is and beautiful.
 a) noisy b) loud c) hot d) quiet

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do people plant?
- 4 Who do the children see on their boats?
- 5 What do families do at the end of the day?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 what did you see on the riverbank

- 2 i went on a trip

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من أربع جمل (25 كلمة) مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

"A day by the Nile River"

boat – sail – calm





Lessons 4 and 5

A Trip to the Mountains



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	fields	حقول	peaceful (adj)	هادئ
rocks	صخور	distance	مسافة	relaxed (adj)	مسترخ

Extra vocabulary

mountains	جبال	view	منظر	wide (adj)	واسع
stream	مجرى (نهر)	gently	بلطف	truly	حقاً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
share	شارك	shared	شارك
pack	يعد / يجهز	packed	يعد / يجهز
flow	يتدفق	flowed	يتدفق
wish	يتمنى	wished	يتمنى

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat	يأكل	ate	يأكل
make	يصنع	made	يصنع

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Sara went on a trip to the mountains last weekend.
ذهبت سارة في رحلة إلى الجبال في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
- ✓ The weather was cold.
كان الطقس بارداً.
- ✓ The view was beautiful with tall green trees and wide fields.
كان المنظر جميلاً مع الأشجار الخضراء الطويلة والحقول الواسعة.
- ✓ A big river was flowing gently between the rocks.
كان هناك نهر كبير يتدفق بلطف بين الصخور.
- ✓ The sound of the water made the place peaceful.
صوت الماء جعل المكان هادئاً.
- ✓ They walked on small paths and took photos of birds.
كانوا يسبرون في مسارات صغيرة ويلتقطون صوراً للطيور.
- ✓ At night, they sat near the mountains, and shared stories.
في الليل، كانوا يجلسون بالقرب من الجبال، يتبادلون القصص.
- ✓ Sara felt happy and wished Lina was there.
شعرت سارة بالسعادة وتمنت لو كانت لينا هناك.

رحلة إلى الجبال Trip to the Mountains

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Dear Lina,

I hope you are doing well. I want to tell you more about my trip to the **mountains**⁽¹⁾ last weekend. On that day, the weather was cold, but the **view**⁽²⁾ was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, **wide**⁽³⁾ fields, and a big stream **flowing**⁽⁴⁾ gently between the **rocks**⁽⁵⁾. The sound of the water made the place feel **peaceful**⁽⁶⁾. We walked on small paths and stopped to take photos of the birds that were singing in the **distance**⁽⁷⁾. Although we were far from the city, I felt happy and relaxed. At night, we sat near the mountains, and shared stories together. I ate some delicious fruit that my mother packed, and it made me smile. It was **truly**⁽⁸⁾ a wonderful trip, and I wished you were with me.

Your friend,

Sara

- | | |
|-----|-------|
| (1) | جبال |
| (2) | منظر |
| (3) | واسع |
| (4) | يتدفق |
| (5) | صخور |
| (6) | هادئ |
| (7) | مسافة |
| (8) | حقاً |

عزيزتي لينا،

أتمنى أن تكوني بخير. أريد أن أخبرك المزيد عن رحلتي إلى الجبال في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية. في ذلك اليوم، كان الجو بارداً، لكن المنظر كان جميلاً جداً. رأيت أشجاراً خضراء طويلة وحقولاً واسعة، مجرى (نهر) كبيراً يجري برفق بين الصخور. كان صوت الماء يجعل المكان يتصف بالهدوء. سرنا في ممرات صغيرة وتوقفنا لالتقاط صور للطيور التي كانت تغني على مسافه.

وعلى الرغم من أننا كنا بعيدين عن المدينة، شعرنا بالسعادة والاسترخاء. في الليل، جلسنا قرب الجبال وتبادلنا القصص معاً. أكلت بعض الفاكهة اللذيذة التي حضرتها لي أمي، وجعلتني أبتسم. كانت بالفعل رحلة رائعة، وتمنيت لو كنت معي.

صديقتك،

سارة

Writing

How to write a letter كيفية كتابة خطاب

Greeting: Dear (اسم المرسل اليه),

Introduction: (Reason of writing)

المقدمة: (سبب الكتابة)

Body: (Details - What happened? Who was there?)

الموضوع: (ماذا حدث - من كان موجودًا؟)

Closing: End politely

الخاتمة: (أنه بأدب)

Your friend,

Signature (اسمك)

Word bank to help you with the letter

مجموعة كلمات لمساعدتك في كتابة الرسالة

Greeting: Dear, Hello, Hi,

Time words: yesterday, last week, on Friday, during the holiday

Feeling words: happy, excited, surprised, tired

Action words: went, saw, played, visited, helped, made, enjoyed

Closing: Write back soon, See you soon, Your friend, Best wishes

Your Turn SB



Write a letter to a friend about a trip to an oasis:

Dear,

.....

.....

.....

Your friend,

.....

A Presentation عرض تقديمي

How to make a presentation

Prepare a presentation about what you like in the place where you live:

When you make a presentation, you should make sure to:

عند تقديم عرض تقديمي، يجب عليك التأكد من:

- Use clear headings. استخدم عناوين واضحة.
- Add pictures of the different types of environments. أضف صورًا لأنواع البيئات المختلفة.
- Keep the text simple. حافظ على النص بسيطًا.
- Speak for 3-5 minutes. تحدث لمدة 3-5 دقائق.
- Speak clearly and slowly so your friends can understand you. تحدث بوضوح وببطء حتى يتمكن أصدقاؤك من فهمك.
- Say, "Today I will talk about different types of environments." قل، «اليوم سأحدث عن أنواع مختلفة من البيئات».

قل، «اليوم سأحدث عن أنواع مختلفة من البيئات».

Give your feedback: Circle stars (1-5) to rate. Add a comment if you need to.

قدّم ملاحظاتك: ضع دائرة حول عدد النجوم (1-5) للتقييم. أضف تعليقًا إذا احتجت إلى ذلك.

1 star = poor

أحسنت "Good job"

2 stars = fair

ممتاز "Excellent"

3 stars = good

عمل رائع "Well done"

4 stars = very good

من فضلك تحدّث بصوت أعلى "Please speak louder"

5 stars = excellent

أجتهّد أكثر قليلًا "Work a little harder"

1st group

★★★★★

2nd group

★★★★★

3rd group

★★★★★



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



1 The weather was cold.

(.....)

2 I saw tall green trees and beautiful flowers.

(.....)

3 I felt sad and bored.

(.....)

4 I want to go on the trip again.

(.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The beautiful sound of the water made me feel

- a) hot b) cold c) dark d) peaceful

2 We couldn't see the plane well. It was far in the

- a) bakery b) sea c) distance d) river

3 Sara's mother some fruit for the trip.

- a) packed b) told c) sat d) saw

4 I visited my grandparents' village and saw green trees and wide

- a) fruits b) malls c) trips d) fields

5 At the end of the day, I felt happy and

- a) sad b) relaxed c) angry d) annoyed

6 The big stream is gently between rocks.

- a) flowing b) doing c) making d) packing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

together – oasis – environment – exciting – trees

Dear Emad,

I want to tell you about my trip. I went to an (1)..... with my family. It was very (2)..... I saw tall (3)..... and clear water. It was quiet and peaceful, but it was also fun to see so many new things. I hope we can go (4)..... one day.

Your friend,

Samy

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Amgad. Last Friday, my family and I visited an oasis. The weather was sunny and warm. We saw many palm trees and a small lake. My brother and I rode camels and took pictures. We ate lunch under the trees and drank fresh water, and juice. The place was quiet and beautiful. I was very happy to visit the oasis.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about a/an
 a) forest b) oasis c) city d) village
- 2 We ate lunch under the trees and drank fresh
 a) water b) juice c) milk d) oil

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did the family visit the oasis?
- 4 What did they see?
- 5 Who rode camels and took pictures?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 last week, my family visited an oasis
- 2 which place do you like more

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من أربع جمل (25 كلمة) مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

"A trip to the village"

exciting – trip – friends



Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

environment	بيئة	buildings	مبانٍ
city	مدينة	village	قرية
oasis	واحة	river	نهر
tents	خيام	wells	آبار
advantages	مميزات	challenges	تحديات

Lesson (2)

forest	غابة	weather	طقس
busy	مزدحم / مشغول	path	طريق
beside	بجانب	sunny	شمس
story	قصة	travelers	مسافرون
sellers	بائعون	quiet	هادئ
notice	يلحظ	far from	بعيد عن

Lesson (3)

fisherman	صياد سمك	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
boat	قارب	sail	يبحر
riverbank	ضفة النهر	trip	رحلة
calm	هادئ	near	بالقرب من
crops	محاصيل	history	تاريخ
again	مرة أخرى	catch	يمسك / يصطاد

Lessons (4 and 5)

Dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	fields	حقول
peaceful	هادئ	distance	مسافة
relaxed	مستريح	stream	مجرى (نهر)
mountains	جبال	view	منظر
wide	واسع	gently	بلطف

Language in Use

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

e.g. – My family **visited** Cairo last week. – I **went** to my school yesterday.

1. Regular Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها
(ed).

walk → walked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف
لها (d).

notice → noticed

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها
حرف ساكن يحذف الـ (y)
ويضاف لها (ied).

study → studied

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن
قبله حرف متحرك يضاعف
الحرف الساكن ثم يضاف (ed).

stop → stopped

2. Irregular Verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هي أفعال تتغير في الماضي (تحفظ) كما هي:

Present		Past		Present		Past	
go	يذهب	went		take	يأخذ	took	
buy	يشترى	bought		see	يرى	saw	
make	يصنع	made		eat	يأكل	ate	

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
buildings	خيام
oasis	جيران
village	آبار
environment	تحديات
city	نهر

Lesson 2

forest	طقس
busy	طريق
far from	قصة
travelers	هادئ
sellers	بجانب

Lesson 3

fisherman	رحلة
boat	محاصيل
palm trees	تاريخ
sail	بالقرب من
riverbank	مرة أخرى

Lessons 4 and 5

dear	جبال
fields	منظر
peaceful	مستريح

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

wake up

compare

adapt

ask

Past

wore

Present

find

catch

rest

Past

finished

traveled

Unit 1 | WRITING TIME

تجميعه لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about life in the city and the village:

- People in the village + وصف الحياة في القرية
- They + ذكر ما يقوم به القرويون
- City life was different.
- People lived + ذكر شكل الحياة في المدينة
- تفاصيل أكثر عن الحياة في المدينة.

"Life in the City and the Village"

People in the village lived very simply. They farmed, raised animals, and knew all their neighbors. City life was different. People lived in tall buildings. They used cars and buses. They had shops everywhere.

How to write a letter:

- Greeting: Dear + اسم المرسل اليه
- I hope you are doing well.
- Body (تفاصيل الموضوع)
- Your friend,

اسمك

"A letter to your friend about a desert trip"

Dear Omar,

I hope you are doing well.

Last weekend, I went with my family on a trip to the desert. The weather was sunny, but nice. We rode camels and took many photos. I wished you were with me.

Your friend,

Amr

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة.

1 Rearrange the words to make a sentence:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة:

1 took / a / boat / **They** / small / the / on / Nile.

2 was / **A** / fisherman / fish / catching.

3 walked / the / riverbank / along / **They**.

4 **Youssef** / sail / learned / to / how.

5 palm trees / riverbank / near / were / tall / **There** / the.

2 Read and complete the letter using the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل الخطاب باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Dear – Write back soon – Your friend – trip – trees

..... Omar,

I want to tell you about my to the oasis. It was very exciting! I saw tall
....., and clear water. The oasis was quiet and peaceful, but it was also
fun to see so many new things. I hope we can go together one day.

.....!

.....,

Ali

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

املأ الفراغات بالصيغة الصحيحة للفعل في الماضي البسيط:

1 We (**walk**) to the park yesterday.

2 She (**buy**) apples from the market.

3 They (**play**) football last Saturday.

4 Omar (**eat**) pizza two days ago.

5 I (**visit**) my grandparents last weekend.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 I went to the city last week. (.....)
- 2 The village is quiet and peaceful. (.....)
- 3 Life in the city is very busy. (.....)
- 4 I didn't enjoy the visit. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

- 1 A tall can have many floors where people live or work.
a) desert b) forest c) building d) oasis
- 2 The big stream is gently between rocks.
a) flowing b) playing c) running d) asking
- 3 The is everything around us, like air, water, land, and animals.
a) building b) river c) environment d) oasis
- 4 She to school yesterday.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going
- 5 He play football last weekend.
a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) didn't
- 6 They played football week.
a) last b) now c) next d) soon

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

village – building – hot – water – cities

Egypt has many different environments. There are deserts, villages, and (1).....
In the desert, the weather is very (2)..... and dry. There is little water and few plants.
In the (3)....., the land is green and full of crops. Farmers grow rice, wheat, and vegetables. The Nile River gives (4)..... to the farms and helps plants grow.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

A city is a big and busy place. Many people live and work in the city. There are tall buildings, shops, schools, and hospitals. The streets are full of cars and buses. In the city, people can go to parks, movie theaters, and restaurants. The city is sometimes noisy, but it is an exciting place to live.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A city is a/an place.

a) small and quiet	b) big and busy
c) empty and dark	d) cold and wet
- 2 People can go to the in the city.

a) forest	b) park or cinema	c) farm	d) mountain
-----------	-------------------	---------	-------------

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the main idea of the text?
- 4 How do people move in the city?
- 5 Where can people go in the city for fun?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Yesterday, I (play) football with my friends.
- 2 She didn't (watched) a movie last night.
- 3 I (go) to school by bus yesterday.
- 4 Did she (ate) an apple two days ago?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 i played with my friends yesterday
- 2 where did Youssef go with his father

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من أربع جمل (25 كلمة) مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

"Different places in the environment"

oasis – village – city



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Mona wrote about the city. (.....)
- 2 People in the desert lived in tents. (.....)
- 3 The desert is always cold. (.....)
- 4 People used wells to get water in the desert. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

3

- 1 People to their environments.
a) helped b) adapted c) used d) wrote
- 2 I went on a with my grandfather to the Nile River.
a) trip b) riverbank c) path d) mountain
- 3 A/An is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
a) oasis b) river c) city d) desert
- 4 you visit the zoo last Friday?
a) Did b) Do c) Does d) Doing
- 5 They a lot of photos on their last trip.
a) take b) took c) takes d) taking
- 6 What did you last week?
a) bought b) buys c) buy d) buying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

peaceful – distance – view – water – fields

I went on a trip to the mountains last weekend. The weather was cold, but the (1)..... was so beautiful. I saw tall green trees, wide (2)....., and a big river flowing gently between the rocks. The sound of the water made the place feel (3)..... . I walked on small paths and stopped to take photos of the birds that were singing in the (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

8

Last Friday, Hassan went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat. He helped his grandfather sail. The water in the river was blue and calm. Hassan saw fishermen catching fish. His grandfather showed him the green farms near the river where farmers plant crops, vegetables, and fruits. At the end of the day, they went home together, feeling tired but excited to visit the Nile again soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hassan went on a trip with his
a) father b) grandparents c) grandfather d) grandmother
- 2 He helped his grandfather
a) plant b) sail c) catch fish d) play

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How was the water in the river?
- 4 What did Hassan see on the river?
- 5 How did Hassan feel at the end of the day?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- 1 My mother (bake) bread last week.
- 2 I (see) a colorful bird when I was in the forest.
- 3 What did you (did) yesterday?
- 4 She (clean) her room two days ago.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 sama bought fruits from the market
- 2 What did eslam buy from the market

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من أربع جمل (25 كلمة) مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

7

"Your trip to the Nile River"

sail – calm – peaceful



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهر.

A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 I visited my granddad last (month – year – week).
- 2 The village is quiet and (hot – peaceful – cold).
- 3 I saw green (trees – fields – parks).

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

nice – garden – do – last

Ahmed: Hi, Sara! Where did you go (1) weekend?

Sara : Hi, Ahmed! I went to my grandmother's village. It was so (2)!

Ahmed: Oh, that sounds lovely! What did you (3) there?

Sara : I helped my grandmother in her (4) We picked vegetables like tomatoes and cucumbers.

Ahmed: That sounds fun!

C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 He (goes – went – go) to school yesterday.
- 2 They didn't (eat – ate – eats) fresh fruits yesterday.
- 3 People in the desert live in (forest – houses – tennis).
- 4 Our father (showed – relaxed – told) us old photos.

6 استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:
(الإجابة: أجب عن الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4 اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

4 اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 Amr go on a trip last weekend.
- 2 I didn't visited Cairo two months ago.
- 3 They help their mother yesterday.
- 4 Salma buy some fruit from the market three hours ago.

D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

An oasis is a green place in the desert. There are palm trees, water, and some animals. People live near the oasis because there is water for drinking and farming. The weather is hot in the day, but cool at night. Visitors like to rest in the oasis and enjoy the fresh air. The oasis is a beautiful and peaceful place.

A Read and write (True) or (False):

- 1 An oasis is a green place in the desert. ()
- 2 There aren't any plants in the oasis. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 People live (near – far from – out) the oasis.
- 4 The weather is (cold – cool – hot) in the day.
- 5 The oasis is a beautiful and (noisy – peaceful – dark) place.

E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

8 اكتب فقرة قصيرة مكونة من أربع جمل عن:

"Life in the city"

different – building – buses – noise



Unit Outcomes

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to: ● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- listen carefully to texts and dialogs about how to go green and protect the planet.
- يستمع بعناية إلى النصوص والمحادثات حول الحفاظ على البيئة وحماية الكوكب.
- identify key details such as actions, reasons, and effects related to protecting the environment.
- يحدد التفاصيل الرئيسية مثل الإجراءات والأسباب والآثار المتعلقة بحماية البيئة.
- recognize and understand r-controlled words in spoken sentences.
- يتعرف على الكلمات التي يتحكم بها الحرف ʀ ويفهمها في جمل منطوقة.

Speaking:

- talk about ways to protect the planet using simple sentences.
- يتحدث عن طرق لحماية الكوكب باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- use conjunctions correctly in short spoken sentences.
- يستخدم الروابط بشكل صحيح في جمل قصيرة منطوقة.
- pronounce r-controlled words correctly in speech.
- ينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على حرف ʀ بشكل صحيح في الكلام.

Reading:

- read short texts and dialogs about going green and understand the main ideas.
- يقرأ النصوص القصيرة والمحادثات حول الحفاظ على البيئة ويفهم الأفكار الرئيسية.
- recognize vocabulary related to environmental actions.
- يتعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالأعمال البيئية.
- recognize and understand the use of conjunctions in sentences.
- يتعرف على استخدام الروابط في جمل ويفهمها.

Writing:

- write short sentences or paragraphs about ways to protect the environment.
- يكتب جملًا أو فقرات قصيرة حول طرق حماية البيئة.
- write a simple email including a greeting, a few sentences about a topic, and a closing, create a brochure about going green.
- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا بسيطًا يتضمن تحية، و يضع جمل حول موضوع ما، وخاتمة، وينشئ كتيبًا حول الحفاظ على البيئة.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



recycle

يعيد تدوير



reduce

يقلل



reuse

يعيد استخدام



planet

كوكب



apply

يطبق

Extra vocabulary

clean (adj)

نظيف

less

أقل

electricity

الكهرباء

again

مرة أخرى

refilling

إعادة تعبئة

plastic

بلاستيك

Expressions and Phrases

care for

يعتني بـ

stand for

يرمز لـ

for example

على سبيل المثال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

reduce

يقلل

Past

reduced

Present

reuse

يعيد استخدام

Past

reused

recycle

يعيد تدوير

recycled

waste

يهدر

wasted

turn

يحول

turned

apply

يطبق

applied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

keep

يحافظ على

Past

kept

Present

throw away

يلقي / يرمي

Past

threw away

Definitions

planet

the place where we all live; we must keep it clean and safe

المكان الذي نعيش فيه جميعاً؛ يجب أن نحافظ عليه نظيفاً وآمناً

reduce

using less of something, like water or electricity, to avoid waste

استخدام كميات أقل من شيء ما، مثل الماء أو الكهرباء، لتجنب الهدر

reuse

using something again instead of throwing it away

استخدام الشيء مرة أخرى بدلاً من التخلص منه

recycle

turning old materials into new things, like paper, plastic, or metal

تحويل المواد القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة، مثل الورق أو البلاستيك أو المعدن

apply

to use something you know in a situation

استخدام شيء تعرفه في موقف ما

Caring for Our Planet الإعتناء بكوكبنا



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Teacher

Good morning, class! Today we'll talk about how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs.
صباح الخير يا طلابي! اليوم سنتحدث عن كيفية الحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا باستخدام 3Rs.

What are the 3Rs, Miss?

ما هي الـ 3Rs، يا أستاذة؟



Students



Teacher

They stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.

إنها ترمز لـ التقليل، وإعادة الاستخدام، وإعادة التدوير.

What does Reduce mean?

ماذا يعني التقليل؟



Salim



Teacher

It means using less. For example, don't waste water or electricity.

يعني ذلك استخدامًا أقل. على سبيل المثال، لا تهدر الماء أو الكهرباء.

And Reuse?

و إعادة الاستخدام؟



Farouk



Teacher

It means using things again—like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away.
وهذا يعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى، مثل إعادة ملء الزجاجات بدلاً من التخلص منها.

What about "Recycle"?

ماذا عن "إعادة التدوير"؟



Omar

That's when we turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic.
Remember, class, you should apply what you learned today at school and at home to keep our planet clean!

هو عندما نحول الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة، كالورق أو البلاستيك. تذكروا يا طلاب، عليكم تطبيق ما تعلمتموه اليوم في المدرسة والمنزل للحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا.



Teacher

We will, Miss!

سوف نفعل ذلك، يا أستاذة!



Students



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The teacher talked about how to keep our planet clean.
المعلمة تحدثت عن كيفية الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيف.
- ✓ She taught the students about the 3Rs: Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle.
علمت المعلمة الطلاب عن الـ 3Rs: التقليل، إعادة الاستخدام، وإعادة التدوير.
- ✓ Reduce means using less and not wasting water or electricity.
التقليل يعني استخدام الأشياء أقل وعدم إهدار الماء أو الكهرباء.
- ✓ Reuse means using things again, like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it out.
إعادة الاستخدام تعني استخدام الأشياء مرة أخرى، مثل إعادة ملء الزجاجاة بدلا من التخلص منها.
- ✓ Recycle means turning old things into new things, like paper or plastic.
إعادة التدوير تعني تحويل الأشياء القديمة إلى أشياء جديدة، مثل الورق أو البلاستيك.
- ✓ The teacher told students to use the 3Rs at school and at home.
أخبرت المعلمة الطلاب أن يستخدموا الـ 3Rs في المدرسة وفي البيت.
- ✓ The students promised to help keep the planet clean.
الطلاب وعدوا أن يساعدوا في الحفاظ على نظافة الكوكب.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① We can (reduce – apply – reuse – recycle) water bottles by filling them again.
- ② Earth is our (planet – school – country – city).
- ③ We need to (waste – apply – turn – throw) what we learned at school to protect our planet.
- ④ “(Reuse – Recycle – Reduce – Throw)” means turning the old things into new ones.
- ⑤ We should (reuse – keep – apply – reduce) the amount of waste we make every day.

2. Read again and answer:

- ① What does “Reduce” mean?

.....

- ② Why is it important to apply the 3Rs every day?

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Our teacher talked about the 3Rs. (.....)
- 2 "Reduce" means using things again. (.....)
- 3 "Recycle" means turning old things into new ones. (.....)
- 4 We should use the 3Rs to keep our planet clean. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should old paper instead of throwing it away.
a) apply b) clean c) plant d) recycle
- 2 To help the Earth, we can the amount of plastic we use.
a) throw b) buy c) reduce d) grow
- 3 You can a glass bottle by turning it into a flower vase.
a) reuse b) break c) sell d) wash
- 4 We should apply the 3Rs to keep our clean.
a) car b) planet c) bag d) chair
- 5 The teacher told us to the new ideas in our project.
a) apply b) recycle c) throw d) waste
- 6 It is good to old boxes to keep your toys inside.
a) reuse b) buy c) wash d) throw
- 7 "Reduce" means using water and electricity.
a) more b) less c) waste d) dirty

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

important – reduce – waste – apply – reuse

We must take care of our planet. We mustn't (1)..... water and electricity.
We should (2)..... bottles, bags, and boxes instead of throwing them away.
It's also (3)..... to recycle paper and plastic to keep our environment clean.
Let's (4)..... the 3Rs every day at school and at home to protect our planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our planet is our home, and we must take care of it. Many people throw trash on the ground or waste electricity by keeping the lights on when they don't need them. This hurts the Earth and makes it dirty. We can all help in small ways. We should reduce waste by using less paper and plastic. We can reuse bottles, bags, and boxes instead of buying new ones. We should also recycle things like cans and old newspapers. If we all apply these good habits, our planet will stay clean and healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 - a) playing games
 - b) saving the planet
 - c) going on a vacation
 - d) learning about animals
- 2 The planet we live on is called
 - a) Mars
 - b) Moon
 - c) Sun
 - d) Earth

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why should we take care of our planet?
.....
- 4 What should we do to save electricity?
.....
- 5 What can we reuse instead of buying new ones?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 how can we reuse old things
.....
- 2 we can recycle paper and plastic
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

“The 3Rs to help the Earth”

reduce – reuse – recycle





Lesson 2 Go Green



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	tote bags	حقائب قماش
litter	قمامة	bin	سلة المهملات
remind	يُذكر	surrounding	بيئة محيطة

Extra vocabulary

healthy (adj)	صحي	page	صفحة	paper letter	خطاب ورق
idea	فكرة	sea animals	حيوانات بحرية	nature	الطبيعة

Expressions and Phrases

go green	الحفاظ على البيئة	one way	إحدى الطرق
both sides	على كلا الجانبين	instead of	بدلاً من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
help	يساعد helped	share	يتشارك shared
harm	يضر harmed	remind	يُذكر reminded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
write	يكتب wrote	send	يرسل sent

Let's Go Green!

هيا نحافظ على البيئة!



Warm up

What do you think "go green" means?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy⁽¹⁾.

One way⁽²⁾ to go green⁽³⁾ is to use less paper.

We can write⁽⁴⁾ on both sides⁽⁵⁾ of the page⁽⁶⁾ and send emails instead of paper

letters⁽⁷⁾. To reduce pollution⁽⁸⁾, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. It's also a great idea to use tote bags⁽⁹⁾ instead of plastic ones when shopping⁽¹⁰⁾ because plastic harms⁽¹¹⁾ sea animals and nature⁽¹²⁾. We should always throw litter⁽¹³⁾ in the bin⁽¹⁴⁾ and remind⁽¹⁵⁾ others to keep our surroundings⁽¹⁶⁾ clean. When we all work together, we help our planet stay clean, safe, and green for everyone to enjoy.



- صحى (1)
إحدى الطرق (2)
يحافظ على البيئة (3)
يكتب (4)
كلا الجانبين (5)
صفحة (6)
خطابات ورقية (7)
تلوث (8)
حقائب قماش (9)
التسوق (10)
يضر (11)
الطبيعة (12)
قمامة (13)
سلة المهملات (14)
يُذكر (15)
البيئات المحيطة (16)

Checkpoint

① How can we use less paper?

② Why should we use tote bags instead of plastic ones?

يمكننا جميعًا المساهمة في الحفاظ على كوكبنا نظيفًا وصحيًا. إحدى طرق الحفاظ على البيئة هي تقليل استخدام الورق. يمكننا الكتابة على جانبي الصفحة وإرسال رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بدلًا من الخطابات الورقية. وللحد من التلوث، يمكننا المشي أو ركوب الدراجات أو مشاركة ركوب السيارات مع الآخرين بدلًا من استخدام سيارات متعددة. ومن الأفكار الرائعة أيضًا استخدام الحقائب القماشية بدلًا من الحقائب البلاستيكية عند التسوق، لأن البلاستيك يضر بالحيوانات البحرية والطبيعة. يجب علينا دائمًا رمي النفايات في سلة المهملات وتذكير الآخرين بالحفاظ على نظافة بيئتنا المحيطة. عندما نعمل جميعًا معًا، نساهم في بقاء كوكبنا نظيفًا وآمنًا وأخضر، ليستمتع به الجميع.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ☑ We should help keep our planet clean and healthy.
ينبغي علينا أن نساعد في إبقاء كوكبنا نظيفاً وصحياً.
- ☑ One way to go green is to use less paper.
إحدى الطرق للحفاظ على البيئة هي استخدام كمية أقل من الورق.
- ☑ We can write on both sides of paper and send emails instead of paper letters.
يمكننا الكتابة على جانبي الورقة وإرسال رسائل البريد الإلكتروني بدلاً من الخطابات الورقية.
- ☑ We can reduce pollution by walking, riding a bike, or sharing rides with others.
يمكننا تقليل التلوث عن طريق المشي، أو ركوب الدراجة، أو مشاركة الرحلات مع الآخرين.
- ☑ We should use tote bags instead of plastic bags to protect nature.
ينبغي علينا استخدام الأكياس القماشية بدلاً من الأكياس البلاستيكية لحماية الطبيعة.
- ☑ Plastic hurts sea animals and the environment.
البلاستيك يضر بالحيوانات البحرية والبيئة.
- ☑ We must throw litter in the bin and remind others to stay clean.
يجب علينا رمي القمامة في سلة المهملات وتذكير الآخرين بالبقاء نظيفين.
- ☑ When we work together, we keep our planet safe and green for everyone.
عندما نعمل معاً، نحافظ على كوكبنا آمناً وأخضر للجميع.



Read again and answer: SB

① Why do you think using tote bags is better than using plastic ones?

.....

② What can you do at school or at home to keep our planet clean?

.....

Language in Use

Conjunctions الروابط

Conjunctions are words that join parts of a sentence together, helping ideas flow smoothly.
أدوات الربط هي كلمات تربط أجزاء الجملة معًا، مما يساعد على تدفق الأفكار بسلاسة.

nor ولا
adds a second
negative idea
تضيف فكرة ثانية سلبية

so لذلك
shows a result
توضح النتيجة

because لأن
shows a reason or
cause
توضح السبب أو المسبب

nor*e.g.*

(اختيار الأول)

We don't burn plastic,

أداة ربط

nor

(اختيار ثانٍ مرفوض أيضًا)

do we throw it on the ground.

We don't burn plastic, **nor** do we throw it on the ground.

نحن لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نقوم بإلقائه على الأرض.

لاحظ: عند استخدام "nor" لربط جملتين منفيتين:

Negative sentence (جملة منفية) + **nor** + فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل + تكملة الجملة + فاعل

e.g. He can't swim, **nor can he** run fast.

so*e.g.*

السبب

We sort the waste,

أداة ربط

so

النتيجة

our neighborhood stays clean.

We sort the waste, **so** our neighborhood stays clean.

نقوم بتصنيف القمامة، حتى يبقى حيّنا نظيفًا.

because*e.g.*

الفعل

We recycle paper

أداة ربط

because

السبب

it helps save trees.

We recycle paper **because** it helps save trees.

نحن نعيد تدوير الورق لأن ذلك يساعد على إنقاذ الأشجار.

Remember

و and

We use "and" to add two ideas together.

تستخدم "and" لإضافة جملتين معا

e.g. She likes apples and bananas.

لكن but

We use "but" to contrast two ideas.

تستخدم "but" لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. Omar was tired, but he did his homework.

أو or

We use "or" to connect different possibilities.

تستخدم «or» للربط بين الاحتمالات

e.g. Do you want milk or juice?

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية. 📌

- ① My grandma cooked rice (or – and – but – nor) chicken.
- ② Would you like pizza (so – because – or – but) pasta?
- ③ It was cold, (nor – but – because – so) I wore a jacket.
- ④ Hassan was sad, (because – nor – but – so) he lost his game.
- ⑤ Salma doesn't like coffee, (but – because – or – nor) does she like tea.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① I like oranges, (and) I don't like lemons.
- ② Hana was hungry, (because) she ate a sandwich.
- ③ We didn't go out, (so) it was raining.
- ④ Moaz didn't study, (or) did he sleep early.
- ⑤ She reads (but) writes every day.

Quick Practice on Conjunctions

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Adam likes football, he doesn't like tennis.
a) so b) but c) nor d) or
- 2 She was thirsty, she drank water.
a) and b) so c) or d) because
- 3 The children didn't play, did they watch TV.
a) or b) because c) and d) nor
- 4 I practiced four times a week, I want to get better.
a) because b) but c) nor d) or
- 5 Do you like cats dogs?
a) so b) or c) but d) because

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We recycle cans (nor) bottles to keep the park clean.
- 2 I wanted to play outside, (and) it was raining.
- 3 I turned off the lights (but) I wanted to save energy.
- 4 We reuse old jars (because) boxes at home.
- 5 We stayed home (so) it was too hot outside.
- 6 She doesn't waste food, (because) does she waste paper.
- 7 The park looked nice, (but) many people came to visit.
- 8 I wanted to buy plastic toys, (nor) my mom said no.
- 9 You can ride your bike (but) walk to school to save the planet.
- 10 The lights were off (nor) everyone was sleeping.
- 11 He didn't use new bags, (because) did he buy more plastic bottles.
- 12 The children collected bottles, (but) the street became clean.
- 13 We save water (so) electricity.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The children were happy..... they won the game.
a) so b) nor c) because d) or
- 2 It's better to use paper to save trees.
a) more b) less c) colored d) new
- 3 We can write on of the page to use less paper.
a) one side b) corner c) one line d) both sides
- 4 They don't like coffee, do they like tea.
a) and b) nor c) because d) so
- 5 We should plant trees to reduce
a) noise b) pollution c) water d) traffic
- 6 It's better to use bags instead of plastic bags.
a) tote b) big c) new d) small
- 7 Plastic sea animals.
a) harms b) uses c) helps d) reminds
- 8 We must keep our clean and green.
a) books b) toys c) surroundings d) clothes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Planting – clean – bin – bike – streets

Everyone should help to take care of our planet. We must keep the Earth
(1)..... by throwing trash in the (2)..... . When our homes and
(3)..... are tidy, we feel safe and happy. (4)..... trees and flowers
makes our world green and beautiful.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The sea is a wonderful home for many animals. These animals need clean water to live. Sadly, people throw plastic, bottles, and trash into the sea. This pollution makes the water dirty and harms the sea animals. Some animals eat plastic because they think it is food. Others get stuck in plastic bags or nets. We can all help save the sea. We should throw litter in the bin and use less plastic. When we keep the sea clean, sea animals can live safely and happily.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) reusing b) homes c) pollution d) food
- 2 Sea animals need water to live.
 a) dirty b) cold c) clean d) deep

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do the sea animals eat plastic?

- 4 How can we help sea animals live safely?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We planted trees (because) flowers.
- 2 He didn't throw trash on the ground, (but) did he waste water.
- 3 I wanted to go to the park, (so) it started to rain.
- 4 Turn off the lights (and) we need to save electricity.
- 5 You can walk to school (nor) ride your bike.
- 6 We finished our homework, (or) we could watch a movie. **SB**
- 7 He stayed home (nor) he was not feeling well. **SB**
- 8 Is your book in your bag (and) on your desk?
- 9 I ran quickly, (so) I missed the bus.
- 10 They played in the park (but) ate ice cream.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we can all help our planet

- 2 how can plastic harm sea animals and nature



Lesson 3

Saving Resources



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

resources	موارد	water	مياه
electricity	الكهرباء	gas	الغاز
wisely	بحكمة	warm (adj)	دافئ

Extra vocabulary

actions	أفعال	Earth	كوكب الأرض
important (adj)	هام	tap	صنبور (حنفية)
lights	مصابيح - إضاءة	fan	مروحة
carefully	بعناية	differences	اختلافات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

need	يحتاج	needed	turn off	يطفئ	turned off
switch off	يطفئ	switched off	cook	يطهى	cooked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

give	يعطى	gave	make	يصنع	made
run out	ينفذ	ran out	leave	يغادر	left

Take care !

turn off تأتي بمعنى يطفئ / يوقف تشغيل (أى شيء)

switch off تأتي بمعنى يطفئ / يوقف تشغيل (أى جهاز كهربائى له زر تشغيل)

e.g.

turn off the tap يغلق صنبوراً (حنفية) "ليس لها زر تشغيل"

switch off lights and fans يطفئ الإضاءة والمراوح (لها زر تشغيل كهربائى)

Small Actions Make a Big Difference! الأفعال الصغيرة تصنع فرقاً كبيراً!



Warm up

What things do we use every day that come from the Earth?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Our Earth gives us many **important resources**⁽¹⁾ like water, **electricity**⁽²⁾, and **gas**⁽³⁾. We need to use them **wisely**⁽⁴⁾ so they don't **run out**⁽⁵⁾. We can save water by **turning off**⁽⁶⁾ the tap while **brushing our teeth**⁽⁷⁾. We can save electricity by switching off **lights**⁽⁸⁾ and fans when we leave the room. Gas helps us cook and stay **warm**⁽⁹⁾, so we should never waste it. We can also **remind**⁽¹⁰⁾ our family and friends to use these resources **carefully**⁽¹¹⁾. When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and healthy for everyone. **Small actions**⁽¹²⁾ every day can make a **big difference**⁽¹³⁾!

- | | |
|------|-----------------|
| (1) | موارد هامة |
| (2) | الكهرباء |
| (3) | الغاز |
| (4) | بحكمة |
| (5) | ينفذ |
| (6) | إطفاء |
| (7) | غسل أسناننا |
| (8) | مصابيح - إضاءة |
| (9) | دافئ |
| (10) | يُذكر |
| (11) | باعتناء |
| (12) | أفعال صغيرة |
| (13) | اختلافاً كبيراً |

Checkpoint

① What does the Earth give us?

② How can we save electricity?

③ How can gas help us?

تُوفّر لنا أرضنا موارد هامة عديدة كالماء والكهرباء والغاز. علينا استخدامها بحكمة حتى لا نفقد. يمكننا توفير الماء بإغلاق الصنبور (الحنفية) عند غسل أسناننا. كما يمكننا توفير الكهرباء بإطفاء الأنوار والمراوح عند مغادرة الغرفة. يُساعدنا الغاز أن نطهى ونبقى دافئين، لذا يجب ألا نُهدره أبداً. كما يمكننا تذكير عائلتنا وأصدقائنا أن يستخدموا هذه الموارد باعتناء. عندما نُحافظ على ما تُوفّره لنا الأرض، نُساعِد على بقاء الكوكب نظيفاً وصحياً للجميع. أفعالاً صغيرة يومياً يمكن أن تُحدث فرقاً كبيراً!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Earth gives us important resources like water, electricity, and gas.

الأرض تعطينا موارد مهمة مثل الماء والكهرباء والغاز.

- We must use these resources wisely, so they don't run out.

يجب أن نستخدم هذ الموارد بحكمة حتى لا تنفد.

- We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our teeth.

يمكننا توفير الماء بإغلاق الصنبور أثناء غسل أسناننا.

- We can save electricity by switching off lights and fans when we leave a room.

يمكننا توفير الكهرباء بإطفاء الأنوار والمراوح عند مغادرة الغرفة.

- Gas helps us cook and stay warm, so we should not waste it.

الغاز يساعدنا على الطبخ والتدفئة، لذلك لا يجب ألا نضيعه.

- We should remind others to save resources too.

يجب أن نذكر الآخرين أيضًا بتوفير الموارد.

- Saving resources helps the Earth stay clean and healthy.

توفير الموارد يساعد الأرض أن تبقى نظيفة وصحية.

- Small actions every day can help protect our planet.

أفعال صغيرة كل يوم يمكن أن تحمي كوكبنا.



Read again and answer:

SB

- How can we save water?

.....

- What should we do to remind others about saving resources?

.....

- How can you and your classmates help save resources at school?

.....

Pronunciation

R-controlled words



Listen and repeat:

استمع وردد:

The letter "r" changes the sound of the vowel before it.

الحرف "r" يغير صوت الحرف المتحرك الذي يسبقه.

ir

birthday عيد ميلاد

shirt قميص

bird طائر

ur

fur فراء

nurse ممرضة

furniture أثاث

purple لون بنفسجي

ar

star نجمة

far بعيدا

or

world العالم

work يعمل

corn ذرة

storm عاصفة

er

teacher معلم

runner العداء

sister أخت

term فصل دراسي (مدة)

tiger نمر

✓ Checkpoint Sort the words in the box:

SB

term – bird – furniture – tiger – corn – purple – star – storm

er	ir	ur	ar	or
.....				
.....				



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should water and electricity to help our planet.
a) play b) save c) buy d) waste
- 2 We should use like water, electricity, and gas carefully.
a) games b) phones c) resources d) colors
- 3 Always use water and energy
a) quickly b) wisely c) loudly d) freely
- 4 We must save water so it doesn't run
a) out b) in c) quickly d) slowly
- 5 We save energy by lights when we leave the room.
a) leaving on b) giving c) running out d) switching off
- 6 We use to cook and stay warm.
a) paper b) wood c) gas d) air

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A Water – wisely – Electricity – fans – Gas

We use many resources every day like gas, water, and electricity. (1)..... is for cooking and keeping warm. (2)..... is for drinking, washing, and cleaning. (3)..... is for lights, fans, and machines. We should use them (4)..... and not waste them.

B run out – carefully – resources – healthy – protect

My name is Omar. We had a class today about (1)..... We have many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them wisely, so they don't (2)..... We can also remind our family and friends to use these resources (3)..... When we save what Earth gives us, we help the planet stay clean and (4)..... for everyone.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ahmed always tries to use resources like water, electricity, and gas wisely. He knows these resources are important and can run out if wasted. He switches off lights and fans when he leaves a room and only uses electricity when it is needed. He closes the tap while washing his hands or brushing his teeth to save water. When cooking, he uses gas carefully and never leaves it on for too long. Ahmed believes that small actions can make a big difference.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 - a) saving money every day
 - b) Ahmed's favorite hobbies
 - c) saving gas, water, and electricity
 - d) cooking food at home
- 2 The resources can if wasted.
 - a) turn off
 - b) run out
 - c) switch off
 - d) turn on

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Ahmed do with lights and fans?
.....
- 4 How does Ahmed help save water?
.....
- 5 How does Ahmed use gas when cooking?
.....

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 how can we save water
.....
- 2 small actions can make a big difference
.....

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Saving our resources"

electricity – turn off – Earth





Lessons 4 and 5

Saving Our Planet Earth



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

plants	نباتات	safe place	مكان آمن	soil	تربة
--------	--------	------------	----------	------	------

Extra vocabulary

kind (adj)	طيب - عطوف	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
strong (adj)	قوي	together	معا

Expressions and Phrases

I hope you are doing great!	أتمنى أن تكون بخير!	take care	يعتنى بـ
-----------------------------	---------------------	-----------	----------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
scare يخيف	scared	protect يحمي	protected
live يعيش	lived	plant يزرع	planted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hurt يؤلم/يؤذي	hurt	grow يزرع/ينمو	grew

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Mona is writing an email to her friend Mai to tell her how to take care of animals and plants.

تكتب منى بريدا إلكترونيا لصديقتها ماي لتخبرها كيف تعتنى بالحيوانات والنباتات.

- ✓ Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live.

تحتاج الحيوانات الى الطعام، والماء، ومكان آمن للعيش.

- ✓ We must not hurt or scare animals.

يجب ألا تؤذي أو نخيف الحيوانات

- ✓ Plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow.

تحتاج النباتات إلى ضوء الشمس، والماء، وتربة نظيفة لتنمو.

- ✓ Planting trees and flowers makes our world beautiful.

زراعة الأشجار و الزهور تجعل عالمنا جميلا.

- ✓ Caring for animals and plants keeps our planet healthy.

الاعتناء بالحيوانات والنباتات يحافظ على صحة كوكبنا.

- ✓ We should protect nature together.

يجب علينا حماية الطبيعة معا.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New message

To: mai@hotmail.com

From: mona@gmail.com

Subject: Taking Care of Animals and Plants

Hi Mai,

I hope you are doing great!

I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them.

Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

Let's protect them together!

Your friend,

Mona

Title for the email

عنوان الإيميل

Greet your friend

قمر بتحيةة صديقك

Introduction: what the email is about

المقدمة:

ما يتحدث عنه الإيميل

Body: details

الموضوع : التفاصيل

Conclusion: friendly closing

الخاتمة: خاتمة ودودة

Closing: sign your name

النهاية: امض باسمك

Send

Checkpoint

① How can we take care of animals?

② What do plants need to grow strong?

مرحباً م،
أتمنى أن تكوني بخير!
أريد أن أخبرك كيف نعتني بالحيوانات والنباتات. يجب أن نكون دائماً لطفاً مع الحيوانات، ونوفر لها الطعام والماء ومكاناً آمناً للعيش. يجب ألا نؤذيها أو نخيفها أبداً.
النباتات أيضاً بحاجة إلى الرعاية. تحتاج إلى ضوء الشمس والماء والتربة النظيفة لتنمو قوية. يمكننا زراعة الأشجار والزهور لنجعل عالمنا أكثر جمالاً. إذا اعتنينا بالحيوانات والنباتات، سيبقى كوكبنا صحيحاً. لنحبهها معاً!
صديقتك،
منى

How to write an email كيفية كتابة بريد إلكتروني

New message



To: إيميل المرسل إليه

From: إيميل الراسل

Subject: Title for the email (عنوان البريد الإلكتروني)

Greet your friend. ابدأ بتحية لصديقك

Hi Mai,

e.g. I hope you are doing great!

Introduction: what the email is about

المقدمة: ما يتحدث عنه البريد الإلكتروني

e.g. I want to tell you about how we can take care of animals and plants.

Body: details

الموضوع: يتضمن تفاصيل عن الموضوع

e.g. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live.

Conclusion: friendly closing

الخاتمة: أنه بجملة ودوة مثل (لنحميهم معا)

e.g. (Let's protect them together!).

Closing: Sign your name.

امض باسمك

Send

Your Turn SB



Write an email of (24 – 30) words to your teacher explaining what you learned about protecting our planet. Use at least 5 words from the box:

reuse – reduce – recycle – planet – litter – pollution – animals – energy – electricity – trees

New message



To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Send



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Plants are very important for our planet. (.....)
- 2 Plants give us clean water to drink. (.....)
- 3 Plants need sunlight, clean water, and good soil to grow strong. (.....)
- 4 When we plant trees and flowers, we help nature stay healthy. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should always be to animals.
a) kind b) clean c) careless d) loud
- 2 Animals need and water.
a) clothes b) books c) toys d) food
- 3 Plants need to grow strong.
a) pollution b) sunlight c) electricity d) litter
- 4 We can plant and flowers to help the planet.
a) trees b) cars c) stones d) papers
- 5 Caring for animals and plants keeps our healthy.
a) clothes b) shoes c) planet d) toys
- 6 We should never animals.
a) love b) feed c) protect d) hurt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

healthy – water – animals – sunlight – pollution

We should take care of our planet. We must help (1)..... and plants. Animals need food, (2)....., and a safe home. Plants need (3)..... and water to grow. If we take care of animals, plants, and our planet, the Earth will stay clean and (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Animals need love and care just like people. We should always be kind to them and give them clean water and healthy food. Animals also need a safe place to live, where they can play and rest without danger. We must never hurt animals or scare them because they can feel pain and fear. When we take care of animals, they stay healthy and happy, and our world becomes kinder and better.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) caring for babies b) caring for plants
 c) caring for people d) caring for animals
- 2 The underlined word "scare" means to feel
 a) afraid b) happy c) safe d) cool

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can we be kind to animals?

- 4 What do animals need to live?

- 5 What happens when we take care of animals?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 let's protect the world together

- 2 who should save water and electricity

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Taking care of animals and plants"

sunlight – water – protect



Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

recycle	يعيد تدوير	reduce	يقلل
reuse	يعيد استخدام	planet	كوكب
apply	يطبق	clean	نظيف
electricity	كهرباء	plastic	بلاستيك
refilling	إعادة تعبئة	stand for	يرمز لـ

Lesson (2)

pollution	تلوث	tote bags	حقائب قماش
litter	قمامة	bin	سلة المهملات
paper letters	خطابات ورقية	page	صفحة
remind	يذكر	surrounding	بيئة محيطة
go green	الحفاظ على البيئة	both sides	كلا الجانبين

Lesson (3)

water	مياه	resources	موارد
gas	غاز	differences	اختلافات
turn off	يطفئ	wisely	بحكمة
tap	حنفية	warm	دافئ
switch off	يطفئ	lights	مصابيح - إضاءة

Lessons (4 and 5)

kind	طيب - عطوف	safe place	مكان آمن
strong	قوي	soil	تربة
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	plants	نباتات
take care	يعتني بـ	together	معا

Language in Use

Conjunctions

Conjunctions	Examples
nor adds a second negative idea يضيف فكرة سلبية ثانية	We don't burn plastic, nor do we throw it on the ground.
so shows a result يظهر نتيجة	We sort the waste, so our neighborhood stays clean.
because shows a reason or cause توضح السبب أو المسبب	We recycle paper because it helps save trees.

Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

recycle
reduce
reuse
planet
apply

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

الكهرباء

إعادة تعبئة

نظيف

بلاستيك

يرمز لـ

Lesson 2

page
pollution
bin
remind
tote bags
harm

بيئة محيطة

صحي

حيوانات بحرية

خطابات ورقية

الطبيعة

الحفاظ على البيئة

Lesson 3

Earth
gas
warm
tap
switch off

موارد

أفعال

بحكمة

مصايح - إضاءات

بعناية

Lessons 4 and 5

kind
plants
sunlight
strong

مكان آمن

تربة

معا

يعتنى بـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

apply

reuse

send

scare

switched off

run out

harm

hurt

turned

shared



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Let's Go Green!"

- Go green means helping and caring for our planet.
- اذكر الموارد التي يجب أن نحافظ عليها في البيئة + We can save
- Turn off + اذكر أشياء يمكننا فعلها للحفاظ على الموارد
- If we all go green + اذكر كيف سيصبح الكوكب جميلاً

"Let's Go Green!"

(less – turn off – clean)

"Go green" means helping and caring for our planet. We can save Earth by using less water, electricity, and gas. We should turn off the tap when we brush our teeth and switch off the lights when we leave the room. If we all go green, our planet will stay clean, green, and beautiful.

How to write about "Caring for Animals and Plants"

- We should take care of animals and plants.
- Animals need + اذكر ما تحتاج إليه الحيوانات لتعيش
- Plants also need + اذكر ما تحتاج إليه النباتات أيضًا
- If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

"Caring for Animals and Plants"

(need – hurt – soil)

We should take care of animals and plants. Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them. Plants also need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

1

- 1** I wanted to play outside, it was raining.
a) or b) because c) but
- 2** We stayed at home it was too hot to go out.
a) and b) because c) so
- 3** She didn't study, she failed the test.
a) so b) or c) nor
- 4** You can have pizza pasta for lunch.
a) because b) or c) but
- 5** He doesn't like apples, does he like bananas.
a) or b) nor c) so

2

recycle – reduce – reuse – planet – apply

- 1 It's important to plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
- 2 We can old bags and boxes to save materials.
- 3 To protect our, we must take care of nature and animals.
- 4 We need to the amount of waste we make every day.
- 5 The teacher told us to the new ideas in our project.

3

- 1 I ran fast. I didn't win.

.....

- 2 You can play inside. You go to the park.

.....

- 3 We help clean the park. We want to keep it beautiful.

.....

- 4 He was hungry. He ate a sandwich.

[illegible]

- 5 Sara didn't eat breakfast. She didn't drink milk.

[illegible]



Listening

2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 To help our planet use a lot of paper. (.....)
- 2 We can write on both sides of the page. (.....)
- 3 We should use plastic bags. (.....)
- 4 Plastic harms sea animals and nature. (.....)



Reading

3

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should what we learn in class.
a) forget b) apply c) waste d) copy
- 2 He was late, he ran quickly.
a) nor b) so c) because d) or
- 3 You can old bottles or jars to make art or store things.
a) warm b) apply c) reduce d) reuse
- 4 The baby didn't shout, did he cry.
a) and b) but c) because d) nor
- 5 A "....." is the place where we all live.
a) planet b) plant c) plastic d) pollution
- 6 Menna went to bed early she was tired.
a) so b) because c) nor d) or

2

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shares – recycle – difference – pollution – lights

Farida wants to keep the Earth clean and safe. She knows that (1)..... hurts our planet, so she tries to help. She always switches off the (2)..... when she leaves the room. She likes to ride a bike to school and sometimes (3)..... rides with her friends. Farida believes that small actions can make a big (4)..... for our planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. One way to go green is to use less paper. We can write on both sides of the page and send emails instead of paper letters. To reduce pollution, we can walk, ride a bike, or share rides with others instead of using many cars. When we all work together, we help our planet stay clean, safe, and green for everyone to enjoy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We must keep our planet
a) clean b) helpful c) noisy d) unsafe
- 2 When we together, we help our planet stay clean and safe.
a) send b) write c) watch TV d) work

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can we use less paper?
- 4 How can we reduce pollution?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I watered the plants (so) they were dry.
- 2 We cleaned the park (or) it looks nice.
- 3 Sara likes cats (but) dogs.
- 4 He didn't waste paper, (and) did he waste water.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Farida and asmaa go to school by bike
- 2 what resources do we use every day

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Recycling at home"
protect – bottle – paper





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

1 Earth gives us important resources.

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

(.....)

2 We should use the resources wisely.

(.....)

3 We can't save electricity.

(.....)

4 Small actions can't make any differences.

(.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

1 Animals need food, water, and a

a) safe place b) tent c) car d) bag

2 Do you want apples bananas?

a) nor b) or c) because d) but

3 If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay

a) dirty b) cold c) healthy d) small

4 "....." means to use something you know in a situation.

a) Reduce b) Apply c) Recycle d) Reuse

5 We played football had fun.

a) and b) but c) or d) nor

6 He was tired, he finished his homework.

a) so b) and c) nor d) but

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

reduce – electricity – recycle – planet – reuse

We should always take care of our planet. We can (1)..... waste by using less plastic and paper. We can (2)..... bottles and bags instead of throwing them away. We should (3)..... cans and paper to keep the Earth clean. We must never throw litter on the ground. When we reuse, reduce, and recycle, our (4)..... becomes a better and cleaner place for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

It is important to take care of animals and plants. We should always be kind to animals and give them food, water, and a safe place to live. We must never hurt them or scare them. Plants also need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more beautiful. If we care for animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) finding a safe place b) planting trees
 c) caring about animals and plants d) staying healthy
- 2 The underlined verb "take care" means to something.
 a) eat b) protect c) hurt d) scare

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can we be kind to animals?
- 4 What do plants need to grow strong?
- 5 What will happen if we care for animals and plants?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We turned off the lights, (but) we saved energy.
- 2 Salma didn't eat her lunch (or) did she eat a snack.
- 3 Hassan was tired (or) he went to bed early.
- 4 I like apples (because) I don't like bananas.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we can save water by turning off the tap
- 2 how can we go green

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"How to save water"

taps – brush teeth – environment

.....

.....

.....



A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 We should take care of animals and (cars – toys – plants).
- 2 Animals need food, water, and a safe (place – clothes – friends) to live.
- 3 Plants need sunlight, (moon – water – planet), and clean soil to grow strong.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

remind – nature – bin – scare

- Malek : Hamza, don't throw trash on the ground. Always use the (1)
- Hamza : Okay! I will also (2) my friends to keep the park clean.
- Malek : Yes! And we must never hurt or (3) the animals living here.
- Hamza : Right! Taking care of (4) is our job.

C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We must save water, so it doesn't (clean – run out – run quickly).
- 2 We can use (note – bottles – new) bags instead of plastic bags when shopping.
- 3 We wanted to go to the park, (so – but – and) it was too late.
- 4 She is happy (nor – so – because) she got a new phone.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 I didn't bring my umbrella, because I get wet. (.....)
- 2 He didn't eat breakfast, but did he eat lunch. (.....)
- 3 We turned off the TV or it was late. (.....)
- 4 I wore a jacket and it was cold outside. (.....)

D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Amira. Today, we'll talk about how to keep our planet clean using the 3Rs. The 3Rs stand for Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. To "reduce" means using less. For example, don't waste water or electricity. To "reuse" means using things again—like refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away. When we turn old things into new ones, like paper or plastic, this is called "recycling".

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 We can help keep our planet clean using the 3Rs. (.....)
- 2 To "reuse" means using less water. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 We mustn't (use – waste – keep) water and electricity.
- 4 Refilling a bottle instead of throwing it away is called (reducing – applying – reusing).
- 5 To recycle is to turn old things into (waste – new ones – plastic).

E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

Let's Go Green!

"recycle – water – electricity – trees"

.....

.....

.....

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A/ An "....." is a big place with many people, cars, and tall buildings.
a) oasis b) building c) city d) river
- 2 Mazen to his school yesterday.
a) going b) goes c) go d) went
- 3 My grandfather is a He catches fish.
a) doctor b) vet c) fisherman d) farmer
- 4 Youssef learned how to a boat.
a) sail b) finish c) raise d) adapt
- 5 Where did Salma last holiday?
a) travel b) traveling c) traveled d) travels
- 6 I went on a to the Nile River.
a) history b) trip c) farm d) crop
- 7 I saw a big stream gently between rocks.
a) adapting b) flowing c) flying d) finding
- 8 The is everything around us, like air, water, plants, and animals.
a) city b) river c) village d) environment
- 9 My mother me a new dress yesterday.
a) buying b) bought c) buy d) buys
- 10 Hassan to school two days ago.
a) walked b) walks c) walk d) walking

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

river – city – quiet – palm – crops

My grandfather lives in a small village in the south of Egypt. It is a clean and beautiful place with many (1)..... trees and wide fields. People work hard to grow (2)..... and take care of animals. Every morning, some men go to the (3)..... to fish, while others water the plants. Life there is peaceful and (4)..... .

B

desert – tent – hot – oasis – camels

The desert is a dry place. It's (1)..... . People ride (2)..... to travel and carry things across the desert. Some families live in a (3)..... made of cloth. Near the (4)....., they can find water and palm trees.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Omar (find) a colorful bird in the forest yesterday.
- 2 My father (drive) us to the village last weekend.
- 3 What (was) he buy yesterday?
- 4 Where (do) you go last Monday?
- 5 My grandma (cook) rice and vegetables yesterday.
- 6 I (don't) go to school last week.
- 7 The children (playing) football in the park yesterday.
- 8 She (is) happy last night in the party.
- 9 I (build) a small tent near the beach when I was young.
- 10 Adel (drink) some medicine last week.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Where did yousef go
.....
- 2 i felt happy and relaxed
.....
- 3 the view from the mountain is beautiful
.....

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
a) reuse b) break c) hide d) waste
- 2 They didn't write the lesson, did they listen to it.
a) so b) or c) nor d) and
- 3 Always switch off the lights to save
a) paper b) electricity c) air d) water
- 4 Using tote bags helps us reduce in the sea.
a) pollution b) health c) sports d) lessons
- 5 We can go by using less paper and plastic.
a) slow b) green c) high d) hard
- 6 Sama stayed home she has a fever.
a) so b) because c) or d) but
- 7 Water, gas, and electricity are important
a) toys b) foods c) resources d) books
- 8 Small actions every day can make a big
a) sound b) difference c) story d) mistake

- 9 Did he take the bus walk to school?
 a) and b) nor c) or d) but
- 10 People can rides to reduce smoke from cars.
 a) drive b) share c) wash d) paint

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A protect – care for – beautiful – harm – soil

Plants need care. They need sunlight, water, and clean (1)..... to grow strong. We can plant trees and flowers to make our world more (2)..... . If we (3)..... animals and plants, our planet will stay healthy. Let's (4)..... them together.

B water – electricity – teeth – Gas – wisely

Earth gives us many important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We need to use them (1)....., so they don't run out. We can save water by turning off the tap while brushing our (2)..... . We can save (3)..... by switching off lights and fans when we leave the room. (4)..... helps us cook and stay warm, so we should never waste it.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We don't waste water, (so) do we leave the tap running.
- 2 I closed the window, (but) the dust didn't come in.
- 3 She planted more trees (so) she loves nature.
- 4 The park was dirty, (or) we cleaned it.
- 5 We don't throw litter, (but) do we waste paper.
- 6 They recycle glass (but) paper.
- 7 The children are happy (but) they finished their project.
- 8 He didn't study, (so) he was sick.
- 9 We help our parents at home, (because) they can rest.
- 10 I didn't see Ali yesterday, (or) did I see Hani.

4 Punctuate the following:

1 we help our planet stay clean

2 they need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow strong

3 Ahmed and omar enjoyed the quiet streets

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 You can old bottles to make art or store things.
a) drive b) reuse c) sell d) eat
- 2 We some apples from the market yesterday.
a) buys b) bought c) buying d) buy
- 3 The children sat on the and caught some fish.
a) road b) mountain c) riverbank d) garden
- 4 Amr doesn't like tea, does he like coffee.
a) or b) and c) but d) nor
- 5 In the hot desert, people can find water and trees in a/an
a) city b) oasis c) forest d) river

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

catching – crops – boat – teacher – riverbank

Many people around the world work near rivers and seas. Near the (1)....., a fisherman works early in the morning. He gets into his (2)..... and moves across the water. He spends his day (3)..... fish. Farmers grow many (4)..... near the river.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (washing) my clothes and cleaned my room two hours ago.
- 2 Last night, we (see) many birds near the riverbank.
- 3 The sun was hot, (because) we sat under the tree.
- 4 We don't shout in class, (or) do we run around.
- 5 The teacher smiled, (but) the students did well.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers need water and sunlight to grow their
a) toys b) clothes c) crops d) roads
- 2 My mother always me to do my homework before dinner.
a) forgets b) reminds c) harms d) talks
- 3 The baby is crying he lost his toy.
a) and b) because c) or d) but
- 4 Good students what they learn in real life.
a) forget b) apply c) close d) hide
- 5 I the project last week.
a) finishes b) finish c) finished d) finishing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tents – wells – simply – river – camels

Living in the desert is very different from living in a city. People stay in (1).....
to keep cool and travel on (2)..... to move across the sand. They use
(3)..... for water. They live (4)....., without many modern things.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We don't waste food, (or) do we waste water.
- 2 Mona (takes) photos of the tall palm trees three days ago.
- 3 I took my umbrella (so) it was raining.
- 4 He studies hard, (because) he always gets good marks.
- 5 They (go) to the market last Monday.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

planet – litter – plastic – cars

Teacher: Today, we'll talk about how to keep our world clean and green.

Mona: We should throw all (1)..... in the bin, not on the street.

Omar: Yes, and we must use tote bags instead of (2)..... ones.

Laila: We can also walk or ride bikes instead of using many (3).....

Teacher: Great ideas! When we do these things, we help our (4)..... stay safe and healthy.

All students: Let's go green together!

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 A tall (city – building – oasis) can have many floors where people live or work.
- 2 We (meet – meets – met) Ali four days ago.
- 3 (Reuse – Recycle – Reduce) means using less.
- 4 I don't like noise, (but – so – and) I went to the quiet park.

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 I stayed at home so I was sick. (.....)
- 2 I opened the window, nor the air came in. (.....)
- 3 He didn't came early yesterday. (.....)
- 4 I have lunch with my friend last weekend. (.....)



MODULE 2

Unit 3: What's in the Package?

Unit 4: Let's Celebrate

What's in the Package?

ماذا يوجد في العبوة؟



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- use countable and uncountable nouns correctly in sentences. - يستخدم الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة بشكل صحيح في الجمل.
- recognize and read words with silent consonant letters (b/w). - يتعرف ويقرأ الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحروف الساكنة الصامتة (b/w).

Speaking:

- use new vocabulary to describe different types of packaging. - يستخدم مفردات جديدة لوصف أنواع مختلفة من التعبئة.
- talk about countable and uncountable nouns in everyday situations. - يتحدث عن الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في مواقف يومية.
- pronounce words with silent consonant letters (b/w) correctly. - ينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على الحروف الساكنة الصامتة (b/w) بشكل صحيح.

Reading:

- read dialogs related to packaging and shopping. - يقرأ محادثات متعلقة بالتعبئة والتسوق.
- identify countable and uncountable nouns in context. - يتعرف على الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة في السياق.

Writing:

- write a narrative paragraph using countable and uncountable nouns. - يكتب فقرة سردية باستخدام الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.
- organize ideas clearly to describe objects, quantities, and packaging. - ينظم الأفكار بوضوح لوصف الأشياء والكميات وطرق التعبئة.
- create a poster about how to help others. - ينشئ ملصقًا حول كيفية مساعدة الآخرين.



Lesson 1

Sharing with Families



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



neighborhood
الحي



food packages
عبوات الطعام



vegetables
خضراوات



elderly
كبير في السن



delivery
توصيل / تسليم



promise
وعد



climb stairs
يصعد السلم

Extra vocabulary

poor (adj)	فقير	early	مبكرا	market	سوق
busy (adj)	مشغول - مزدحم	sellers	بائعون	peaches	خوخ
carefully	بحرص	lady	سيدة	needs	احتياجات

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ممتلئ بـ	hard work	عمل شاق
---------	----------	-----------	---------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
prepare يجهز / يعد	prepared	call out ينادي	called out
knock يطرق (يخبط)	knocked	arrive يصل	arrived
deliver يوصل	delivered	promise يَعد	promised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
buy يشتري	bought	choose يختار	chose
give يعطي	gave	sit يجلس	sat

A Day of Helping Others يوم مساعدة الآخرين



Warm up

Did you help an elderly person?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Two weeks ago, Kareem and Fatma prepared **food packages**⁽¹⁾ for the poor people in their **neighborhood**⁽²⁾. Early in the morning, they went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed. The market was **busy**⁽³⁾, full of **sellers**⁽⁴⁾ **calling out**⁽⁵⁾ and showing their vegetables and fruits. Kareem chose a kilo of bananas, while Fatma chose a kilo of **peaches**⁽⁶⁾. They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they **packed**⁽⁷⁾ the food carefully into bags. When they arrived at the neighborhood, they **knocked**⁽⁸⁾ on doors and gave the families the food. Kareem helped an elderly lady climb the **stairs**⁽⁹⁾ to her home, and Fatma gave fruits to some children who were smiling. After **delivering**⁽¹⁰⁾ everything, they sat and talked with the families to learn about their needs. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and **promised**⁽¹¹⁾ to do it again.



- | | |
|------|--------------|
| (1) | عبوات الطعام |
| (2) | حي |
| (3) | مزدحم |
| (4) | بائعين |
| (5) | ينادي |
| (6) | خوخ |
| (7) | معبأ / مملوء |
| (8) | طرق |
| (9) | سلالم |
| (10) | توصيل |
| (11) | وعد |

Checkpoint

SB

- 1 Who went with Kareem and Fatma to the market?
- 2 What did Kareem choose at the market?
- 3 How did Kareem and Fatma feel at the end of the day?

منذ أسبوعين، جهّز كريم وفاطمة عبوات طعام للفقراء في حيّهما. في الصباح الباكر، ذهبا إلى السوق مع والدتهما لشراء كل ما يحتاجان إليه. كان السوق مزدحماً، ممثلاً بالبائعين الذين ينادون ويعرضون خضراواتهم وفواكههم. اختار كريم كيلو من الموز، بينما اختارت فاطمة كيلو من الخوخ. كما اشترى أيضاً الطماطم والخيار والخبز. بعد التسوق، وضعوا الطعام بعناية في حقائب. وعندما وصلا إلى الحي، طرقا الأبواب وقّدا الطعام للعائلات. ساعد كريم سيدة مسنة على صعود السلم إلى منزلها، بينما قدّمت فاطمة الفاكهة لبعض الأطفال الذين كانوا يتسمون. بعد تسليم كل شيء، جلسا وتحدثا مع العائلات لمعرفة احتياجاتهم. كان عملاً شاقاً، لكن كريم وفاطمة استمتعا باليوم ووعدا بتكراره.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for poor people in their neighborhood.
أعدَّ كريم وفاطمة عبوات طعام للفقراء في حيَّهما.
- ✓ They went to the market with their mother.
ذهبا إلى السوق مع والدتهما.
- ✓ The market was busy, full of sellers calling out and showing their vegetables and fruits.
كان السوق مزدحمًا، ممتلئًا بالبائعين الذين ينادون ويعرضون الخضراوات والفواكه.
- ✓ They bought bananas, peaches, tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread.
اشترتوا موزًا، وخوخًا، وطماطم، وخيارًا وخبزًا.
- ✓ At the neighborhood, they knocked on doors and gave the families the food.
في الحي، طرقتوا الأبواب وقدموا الطعام للعائلات.
- ✓ Then, they sat and talked with the families to learn about their needs.
ثم بعد ذلك، جلسوا وتحدثوا مع العائلات لمعرفة احتياجاتهم.
- ✓ Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and promised to do it again.
استمتع كريم وفاطمة باليوم ووعدا بأن يكررا ذلك مرة أخرى.

✓ Checkpoint

1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① The children (**enjoyed** – **promised** – **prepared** – **climbed**) food packages for the poor people.
- ② The market is full of (**sellers** – **players** – **teachers** – **students**) calling out and showing their vegetables.
- ③ They bought vegetables like (**cucumbers** – **peaches** – **bananas** – **apples**).
- ④ My brother helped the (**happy** – **elderly** – **excited** – **surprised**) man to climb the stairs.
- ⑤ Salma bought some (**deliveries** – **vegetables** – **packages** – **sellers**) to cook for lunch.

2. Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- ① They went to the market early in the morning with their mother. (.....)
- ② The market was quiet with only a few people. (.....)
- ③ They also bought tomatoes, cucumbers, and bread. (.....)
- ④ Fatma gave vegetables to some children. (.....)



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people. (.....)
- 2 They went to the market with their father. (.....)
- 3 The market was full of sellers. (.....)
- 4 They gave the families some toys. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We live in a small
a) garden b) bus c) school d) neighborhood
- 2 We can help people by giving them food and clothes.
a) rich b) happy c) poor d) excited
- 3 They on doors and gave the poor families the food.
a) knocked b) talked c) helped d) enjoyed
- 4 We went to the market to vegetables and fruits.
a) go b) buy c) promise d) smile
- 5 The children the day and promised to do it again.
a) enjoyed b) played c) talked d) bought
- 6 After shopping, we the food into the bags.
a) played b) went c) packed d) knocked
- 7 The market was, full of people.
a) tired b) busy c) hard d) easy
- 8 I have to climb the to reach the next floor.
a) window b) mountain c) door d) stairs
- 9 Omar his mother to clean his room after school.
a) packed b) delivered c) gave d) promised
- 10 We collected food to give to people who are in need. Super Question ?
a) packages b) games c) stairs d) snacks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunny – market – packed – tomatoes – neighborhood

Hazem and Hana are kind. They wanted to help poor people in their (1)..... .

Early in the morning, they went to the (2)..... with their mother. They bought vegetables, bananas, peaches, (3)..... , cucumbers, and bread. After shopping, they (4)..... the food in bags and gave it to the poor families.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Adam and Zein live in a small neighborhood. They are kind and like to help poor people. Last week, they went to the market with their mother to buy vegetables and fruits. They bought tomatoes, cucumbers, bananas, and peaches. Then they packed the food in bags and gave it to children and families in need. Adam and Zein felt happy when they helped others. They promised to do it again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "neighborhood" means
 a) forest b) oasis c) community d) school
- They went to the market to buy vegetables and
 a) fruits b) toys c) books d) bags

B Answer the following questions:

- What kinds of fruits did Adam and Zein buy?

- How did they feel when they helped others?

- Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 did they buy fruits

.....

2 ola and mona live in a small neighborhood.

.....



Lesson 2

Shopping for a Picnic



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

picnic	نزهة	a carton of milk	علبة لبن
a bar of chocolate	قطعة شokolade	a pack of biscuits	عبوة بسكويت
a bottle of orange juice	زجاجة عصير برتقال	a slice of bread	شريحة خبز
a piece of cheese	قطعة جبن	a kilo of apples	كيلو من التفاح

Extra vocabulary

first	أولاً	dessert	تحلية
butter	زبدة	a lot of	كثير من
excited (adj)	متحمس	together	معاً

Expressions and Phrases

Oh, that sounds fun!	أوه، يبدو ذلك ممتعاً!	Which kind?	أى نوع؟
Good idea!	فكرة جيدة!	What else?	ماذا أيضاً؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
add	added	want	wanted
pack	packed	remind	reminded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
get	got	take	took
bring	brought	be (are)	were

التجهيز للنزهة Preparing for the Picnic



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Laila, I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic with my mother last weekend.

ليلي، أريد أن أخبرك كيف استعددت للنزهة مع والدتي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضية.



Oh, that sounds fun! What did you do first?

أوه، يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! ماذا فعلتِ أولًا؟



Laila



First, we bought a carton of milk for tea. Then my mother chose a bar of chocolate for dessert.

أولاً، اشترينا علبة لبن من أجل الشاي. ثم اختارت والدتي قطعة شوكولاتة للتحلية.



Laila

Which kind did you get?

أي نوع حصلتِ عليه؟



The milk chocolate one. We also packed a big pack of biscuits because my cousins love them.

الشوكولاتة باللبن. كما وضعنا أيضًا عبوة كبيرة من البسكويت لأن أولاد عمي يحبونه كثيرًا.



Laila

Good idea! What else did you add?

فكرة جيدة! ماذا أضفتما أيضًا؟



We took a bottle of orange juice, a slice of bread, and a piece of cheese for each sandwich. My mother also reminded me to bring some butter.

أخذنا زجاجة من عصير البرتقال، وشريحة خبز، وقطعة جبن لكل ساندويتش. كما ذكرتني أمي أن أحضر بعض الزبدة.



Laila

Did you add fruit too?

هل أضفتما فاكهة أيضًا؟



Yes! We packed a kilo of apples for everyone. It was a lot of work, but we were excited and happy to prepare it together.

نعم! وضعنا كيلو من التفاح للجميع. كان العمل كثيرًا، لكننا كنا متحمسين وسعيدتين لأننا حضرناه معًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Noura wants to tell Laila how she prepared for the picnic.

نورة تريد أن تخبر ليلي كيف استعدت للنزهة.

- ✓ Noura and her mother bought a carton of milk and a bar of chocolate.

نورة ووالدتها اشترتا علبة من اللبن وقطعة من شوكولاتة.

- ✓ They packed a big bag of biscuits for her cousins.

أخذوا أيضًا عبوة كبيرة من البسكويت لأبناء عمها.

- ✓ They took also, a bottle of orange juice, a slice of bread, and a piece of cheese for each sandwich.

أخذوا أيضًا زجاجة من عصير البرتقال، قطعة من الخبز، وقطعة جبن لكل ساندويتش.

- ✓ Noura's mother reminded her to bring some butter.

ذكرت والدتها نور ابنتها بأن تُحضّر بعض الزبدة.

- ✓ Noura and her mother were excited and happy.

كانت نورة ووالدتها متحمستين وسعيدتين.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Noura (**enjoyed** – prepared – wanted – was) for the picnic.
- 2 They bought a (**piece** – bar – slice – carton) of milk.
- 3 Her mother chose a (**carton** – slice – bottle – bar) of chocolate for dessert.
- 4 My mother also (**chose** – reminded – remembered – enjoyed) me to bring some butter.
- 5 They were excited and (**bored** – sad – happy – angry).

2. Read again and answer: SB

- 1 What did Noura and her mother buy first for the picnic?

.....

- 2 What kind of chocolate did Noura choose?

.....

- 3 What fruit did they pack for the picnic?

.....

Language in Use

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- تسبق بأداة نكرة (a - an) ، إذا كانت مفردة.
- ويمكن أن يسبقها رقم.

e.g. a pen, an apple, two chairs, five books

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ولا تجمع:

- لا تسبق بأداة نكرة a/an

- لا تسبق برقم

e.g. water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام بعض التعبيرات مع الاسماء الغير معدودة.

e.g. a cartoon of milk / a piece of cheese



Got it:

She has (an) banana.

● الإجابة الصحيحة (a) لأن (banana) أولها حرف ساكن وليس متحركًا.

لاحظ التعبيرات الآتية مع الأسماء غير المعدودة:

Container	حاوية	Kind of food/drink	Examples
carton of		milk – juice	I bought a carton of milk . اشترت عبوة من اللبن.
bottle of		juice – water	I drank a bottle of water . شربت زجاجة من المياه.
bar of		chocolate	My mom ate a bar of chocolate . أكلت والدتي قطعة من الشوكولاتة.
pack of		biscuits	The girl bought a pack of biscuits . البنيت اشترت عبوة من البسكويت.
piece of		cheese	He ate a piece of cheese . هو أكل قطعة من الجبن.
slice of		bread – cheese	I ate 2 slices of bread for breakfast. أكلت شريحتين من الخبز في وجبة الإفطار.
glass of		water – juice	Can I have a glass of water ? هل يمكنني تناول كوب من الماء؟
kilo of		cucumbers	My mother bought a kilo of cucumbers . اشترت والدتي كيلو من الخيار.



Note

لاحظ استخدام (a/an) قبل الأسماء المفردة:

a

تستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بحرف ساكن:

a pen – a book

an

تستخدم (an) قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u):

an apple – an orange

We use **some** and **any** with countable and uncountable nouns.

- نستخدم "some" و "any" مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة.

- نستخدم "some" مع الجمل المثبتة أو العرض والطلب.

e.g. I have **some** apples. → جملة مثبتة

e.g. Would you like **some** juice? → عرض (تقديم)

- نستخدم "any" مع الجمل المنفية أو السؤال.

e.g. We don't have **any** bread. → جملة منفية

e.g. Is there **any** butter? → سؤال

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① We bought a (bar – slice – piece – carton) of milk.
- ② I saw (an – a – few – many) cat in the garden.
- ③ I need (some – few – an – a) bottle of water.
- ④ My mother bought (some – any – an – a) bread for lunch.
- ⑤ I want an (banana – guava – orange – fig).

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 There is (a) apple.
- 2 I bought a (bottle) of tomatoes.
- 3 I drank a (slice) of milk.
- 4 My father needed (a) bread.
- 5 She has three (pen) in her bag.

Quick Practice on Countable and Uncountable Nouns

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I put a of cheese in my sandwich.
a) carton b) bottle c) piece d) slices
- 2 My sister bought a of chocolate.
a) bottle b) bar c) cartons d) pieces
- 3 The little boy wants apple.
a) some b) a c) any d) an
- 4 I need water.
a) an b) a c) any d) some
- 5 There is a of biscuits in my lunch box.
a) pack b) bottle c) glass d) carton

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My father has (a) apple in the evening.
- 2 My sister eats a (carton) of chocolate.
- 3 I have (an) pen.
- 4 She has a (piece of) orange juice.
- 5 I need a glass (in) water.
- 6 Sara ate a (carton) of bread for breakfast.
- 7 I want to eat (an) rice.
- 8 Mazen shared a (bottle) of biscuits with his brother.
- 9 Lara bought (a) ice cream.
- 10 I drink (a) water.
- 11 My mother bought a (kilos) of tomatoes.
- 12 I need (a) milk.
- 13 I have (a) orange in my lunchbox.
- 14 I have (an) banana in my bag.
- 15 My father bought a (slice) of carrots.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 I prepared for the school. (.....)
- 2 I bought a carton of milk. (.....)
- 3 My mother chose a bar of chocolate. (.....)
- 4 There aren't any biscuits on the table. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My mother me to bring some butter.
a) called b) reminded c) prepared d) packed
- 2 At the shop, we a pack of biscuits to share with friends.
a) found b) bought c) enjoyed d) reminded
- 3 I need two of bread to make a sandwich.
a) slices b) cartons c) packs d) bottles
- 4 I eat egg for breakfast every day.
a) piece b) a c) slice d) an
- 5 It's very hot, I need a of cold water.
a) glass b) kilo c) slice d) pack
- 6 A: What did you get? B: The milk chocolate. Super Question ?
a) size b) number c) color d) kind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pack – carton – piece – animals – bread

I have a yummy breakfast every morning. I drink a (1)..... of milk and eat a slice of (2)..... My sister eats a (3)..... of cheese and drinks a bottle of orange juice. After breakfast, we sometimes eat a bar of chocolate or a (4)..... of biscuits. We love our breakfast!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

It is Sunday morning. Ali and his family are in the kitchen. Ali is very hungry. His mother gives him a slice of bread and a piece of cheese. His sister, Sara, is drinking a carton of milk. Their father is drinking a bottle of orange juice and reading the newspaper. After breakfast, Ali eats a bar of chocolate and shares a pack of biscuits with Sara. They are all happy and ready for a fun day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali is very
 a) angry b) sad c) hungry d) excited
- 2 is drinking a carton of milk.
 a) Ali b) Father c) Mother d) Sara

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Ali eat for breakfast?
- 4 How many bars of chocolate does Ali eat?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences .?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I bought a (bottle) of cucumbers.
- 2 I have (a) egg as a snack.
- 3 He has (an) pencil in his bag. SB
- 4 There are some (apple) in the fridge.
- 5 We need a (bars of) bread for breakfast.
- 6 I see (an) red flower.
- 7 My brother eats a (slice) of chocolate after lunch.
- 8 For breakfast, I like to eat a (pack) of butter with jam.
- 9 I usually drink a (piece) of milk in the morning.
- 10 Can I have (a) cheese for my sandwich, please?
- 11 At the shop, we buy a (slice) of biscuits to share with friends.

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Shopping for a picnic"

a bar of chocolate – a bottle of water – a pack of biscuits



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3 A School Picnic



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	healthy (adj)	صحي	shiny (adj)	لامع
crunchy (adj)	مقرمش	colorful (adj)	ملون	fresh (adj)	طازج

Extra vocabulary

basket	سلة	group	مجموعة	a bunch of	مجموعة من
cooler	مبرد	ice	ثلج	each	كل
student	طالب	captain	قائد	art teacher	مدرس الرسم

Expressions and Phrases

hold a picnic	يقيم (ينظم) نزهة	snack station	ركن للوجبات الخفيفة
---------------	------------------	---------------	---------------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
share يشارك	shared	ask يسأل	asked
arrange يرتب	arranged	place يضع	placed
line up يرتب	lined up	pass يمرر	passed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hold ينظم	held	set up يجهز	set up
break يكسر	broke	come يأتي	came

حديقة الأزهر Al Azhar Park



Warm up

What can you do to prepare for a school picnic?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

On Monday, our school **held**⁽¹⁾ a picnic in Al Azhar Park. Students brought baskets to **share**⁽²⁾. My teacher asked my group to **set up**⁽³⁾ a healthy lunch. We **arranged**⁽⁴⁾ vegetables and fruits first: **shiny**⁽⁵⁾ tomatoes and **crunchy**⁽⁶⁾ cucumbers beside **colorful**⁽⁷⁾ peaches and a bunch of bananas. Next, we made a small snack station. I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice. My friend **lined up**⁽⁸⁾ a slice of bread for each student and added a piece of cheese on top. Our class captain opened a pack of biscuits for dessert and **passed**⁽⁹⁾ a bar of chocolate to the art teacher to break into squares. After eating, they packed fresh food and gave it to the students who couldn't come. Everyone thanked us and promised to join next time again soon.



- | | |
|-----|-------|
| (1) | نظمت |
| (2) | يشارك |
| (3) | يُعد |
| (4) | رتب |
| (5) | لامع |
| (6) | مقرمش |
| (7) | ملون |
| (8) | رتب |
| (9) | مرر |

يوم الإثنين، نظمت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر. أحضر الطلاب سلالاً للمشاركة. طلبت معلمتي من مجموعتي إعداد غداء صحي. رتبنا الخضراوات والفواكه أولاً: طماطم لامعة وخيار مقرمش، إلى جانب خوخ ملون ومجموعة موز. بعد ذلك، أعددنا ركنًا صغيرًا للوجبات الخفيفة. وضعتُ علبة لبن وزجاجة عصير برتقال في مبرد مع ثلج. رتب صديقي شريحة خبز لكل طالب، وأضاف قطعة جبن فوقها. فتح قائد صفنا علبة بسكويت كتحلية، وسلم قطعة شوكولاتة إلى معلم الرسم لتكسيدها إلى مربعات. بعد تناول الطعام، جهزوا طعامًا طازجًا وقدموه للطلاب الذين لم يتمكنوا من الحضور. شكرنا الجميع ووعدونا بالمشاركة في المرة القادمة قريبًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Our school held a picnic in Al Azhar Park. نظمت مدرستنا نزهة في حديقة الأزهر.
- ✓ Students brought baskets to share. أحضر الطلاب سلالًا للمشاركة.
- ✓ They set up a healthy lunch. جهزوا غداء صحيًا.
- ✓ We arranged the fruits and vegetables. قمنا بترتيب الفواكه والخضراوات.
- ✓ I placed a carton of milk and a bottle of orange juice in a cooler with ice. وضعت لبنًا وزجاجة عصير برتقال في مبرد مع الثلج.
- ✓ We packed fresh food and gave it to students who couldn't come. قمنا بتعبئة الطعام المتبقى في عبوات لتوزيعها على الطلاب الذين لم يتمكنوا من الحضور.
- ✓ Everyone thanked us and promised to join next time again soon. شكرنا الجميع ووعدوا بالانضمام إلينا مرة أخرى قريبًا في المرة القادمة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- 1 The picnic took place in the school cafeteria. (.....)
- 2 Each student received a slice of bread with a piece of cheese. (.....)
- 3 The art teacher refused the bar of chocolate. (.....)
- 4 Leftovers^(*) were packed into food packages for neighbors. (.....)
- 5 No one thanked the students at the end. (.....)

2. Read again and answer: SB

- 1 Where did the school picnic take place?
.....
- 2 What did the students arrange first for lunch?
.....
- 3 What did the students do after eating?
.....

Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Silent b: The letter “b” is silent when it comes after “m” at the end of a word.

حرف (b) يكون ساكن عندما يأتي بعد حرف (m) في نهاية الكلمة.

b



lamb

حمل (خروف صغير)



thumb

الإبهام



comb

مشط



climb

يتسلق

Silent w: The letter “w” is not pronounced when it comes before “r” at the beginning of a word.

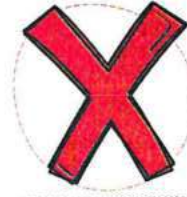
حرف «w» لا يُنطق عندما يأتي قبل «r» في بداية الكلمة.

w



write

يكتب



wrong

خطأ



wrist

معصم اليد



wrap

يلف

Checkpoint Sort the words: **SB**

lamb – wrote – plumber – thumb – wrapper – wrist

Silent b	Silent w



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My school a picnic in Al Azhar Park on Saturday.
a) went b) packed c) held d) brought
- 2 At a picnic, we can food with our friends.
a) sell b) hide c) share d) throw
- 3 The teacher asked the group to up a healthy lunch at the picnic.
a) get b) set c) sit d) promise
- 4 I liked the cucumbers. They were
a) colorful b) unhealthy c) crunchy d) bad
- 5 They packed food and gave it to the students.
a) fresh b) bad c) dangerous d) sad
- 6 For dessert, we had biscuits and
a) pizza b) chocolate c) soup d) sandwiches
- 7 My friend lined up a of bread for each student.
a) carton b) glass c) slice d) kilo

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

brought – garden – cucumbers – fresh – Al Azhar

On Saturday, our school held a picnic. We went to (1)..... Park. It is very beautiful. Students (2)..... food to share. We had fruits and vegetables like tomatoes, bananas, and (3)..... We drank milk and orange juice. After eating, we packed (4)..... food for students who couldn't come.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

On Friday, our school had a picnic in the garden. Many students came and brought food to share. We made a healthy snack station with fruits and vegetables. There were tomatoes, cucumbers, bananas, and peaches. We also had milk, orange juice, and bread with cheese. For dessert, we ate biscuits and chocolate. After eating, we packed fresh food to give to poor people. Everyone was **delighted** and had a great day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The school had the picnic in the
 a) garden b) classroom c) park d) beach
- 2 The word "delighted" means
 a) unhappy b) happy c) sad d) angry

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When was the picnic?

- 4 What did the students drink?

- 5 What did they do with the fresh food? **Super Question** ?

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 why did the students bring food to the picnic

- 2 on monday, our school had a picnic in the garden.

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"My school picnic"

garden – share – dessert



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Reem Helps her Mom



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

counter	منضدة المطبخ	lettuce	خس
importance	أهمية	cleanliness	النظافة
proudly	بفخر	responsible (adj)	مسئول

Extra vocabulary

sandwich	ساندوتش	together	معًا	plate	طبق
next	ثم	delicious (adj)	لذيذ	meal	وجبة

Expressions and Phrases

not knowing what to do	لا يعرف ماذا يفعل	Let's + (inf.)	هيا ...
------------------------	-------------------	----------------	---------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wash يغسل	washed	place يضع شيئًا مكانه	placed
pick يختار	picked	decide يقرر	decided
explain يشرح	explained	create يبدع	created

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
can يستطيع	could	know يعرف	knew

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Title Helping Mom

Beginning (When? Who? Where?)

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. First, she washed her hands **carefully**⁽¹⁾. Then, she placed the bread slices on the **counter**⁽²⁾.



- (1) بحرص
(2) منضدة المطبخ

Middle (What happened?)

Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the **lettuce**⁽³⁾ for the sandwiches. Together, they **decided**⁽⁴⁾ to add tomatoes to the salad. Reem asked if she could make the sandwiches, and her mother smiled. As she stopped, not knowing what to do next, her mother **explained**⁽⁵⁾ the importance of **cleanliness**⁽⁶⁾. Reem carefully made the sandwiches and held the plate **proudly**⁽⁷⁾. She felt happy seeing the finished meal. "Let's call the family for lunch!" her mother said.

- (3) خس
(4) قرر
(5) شرح
(6) النظافة
(7) بفخر

Ending (How did it finish? How did you feel?)

Her mother was happy to see her being **responsible**⁽⁸⁾ in the kitchen. Reem smiled, knowing she helped **create**⁽⁹⁾ a **delicious**⁽¹⁰⁾ meal.

- (8) مسئول
(9) يبدع
(10) لذيذ

في الأسبوع الماضي، ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ. غسلت يديها بعناية. ثم وضعت شرائح الخبز على الطاولة. اختارت والدتها بعض الجبن، وغسلت ريم الخس للسندويشات. قررتا معاً إضافة الطماطم إلى السلطة. سألت ريم إن كان بإمكانها تحضير السندويشات، فأبتسمت والدتها. وبينما توقفت، لا تدري ماذا تفعل، شرحت لها والدتها أهمية النظافة. حضرت ريم السندويشات بعناية وأمسكت بالطبق بفخر. شعرت بالسعادة لرؤية الوجبة جاهزة. قالت والدتها: «هيا ندعو العائلة للغداء!». سعدت والدتها برؤيتها مسؤولة في المطبخ. ابتسمت ريم، مدركة أنها ساعدت في تحضير وجبة لذيذة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Reem helped her mother in the kitchen last week.
ساعدت ريم والدتها في المطبخ الأسبوع الماضي.
- ✓ Reem placed bread slices on the counter and washed lettuce for the sandwiches.
وضعت ريم شرائح الخبز على منضدة المطبخ وغسلت الخس لتحضير السندويشات.
- ✓ Reem wanted to make the sandwiches by herself.
أرادت ريم أن تجهز السندويشات بنفسها.
- ✓ Her mother taught her the importance of cleanliness in the kitchen.
علمتها والدتها أهمية النظافة في المطبخ.
- ✓ Reem felt proud and happy when she finished making the meal.
شعرت ريم بالفخر والسعادة عندما انتهت من إعداد الطعام.
- ✓ Reem's mother was happy to see her being responsible in the kitchen.
كانت والددة ريم سعيدة لرؤيتها تتصرف بمسؤولية في المطبخ.

Writing

How to write a narrative paragraph



Tip!

Don't forget to add the following in your narrative paragraph

لا تنس أن تضيف ما يلي في سردك:

1 Title:

عنوان

2 Beginning:

- When was it? (yesterday, last weekend, etc.)
- Where did you go? (market, park, etc.)

متى كانت؟

أين ذهبت؟

3 Middle:

- What did you do first?
- What did you do next?

ماذا فعلت في الأول؟

ماذا فعلت بعد ذلك؟

4 Ending:

- Write the sentence that shows the ending.
- How did you feel?

اكتب الجملة التي توضح النهاية.

كيف شعرت؟

Think and Create A Poster

• Your poster should include:

يجب أن يحتوى البوستر على :

Pictures صور

Clear title عنوان واضح



**Pack food and
share with others**



**Help my father
carry bags**

**How to
Help
Others**

**Help my mom in the
kitchen**



**Help my grandmother
climb the steps**



3 - 4 ideas

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. (.....)
- 2 She didn't wash her hands. (.....)
- 3 Her mother picked some sandwiches. (.....)
- 4 They decided to add tomatoes to the salad. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Reem washed the green to put in the sandwich.
a) peaches b) lettuce c) bread d) cheese
- 2 My mother explained the of washing my hands before cooking.
a) danger b) color c) importance d) kind
- 3 Reem felt when she helped her mother prepare lunch.
a) angry b) sad c) shy d) responsible
- 4 For lunch, we made a healthy for the whole family.
a) meal b) story c) counter d) title
- 5 Reem some fresh tomatoes from the basket.
a) decided b) created c) picked d) explained
- 6 She the bread on the counter before adding cheese.
a) placed b) washed c) broke d) painted

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

add – washed – counter – exciting – sandwiches

Last week, Sama helped her mother in the kitchen. First, she (1)..... her hands very well. Then, she put the bread on the (2)..... . Her mother picked some cheese, and Sama washed the lettuce. They worked together and decided to (3)..... tomatoes to the salad. Reem asked if she could make the (4)..... . Her mother smiled and said yes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Sunday, Ali saw his mother cooking in the kitchen. She was making a big lunch for the family. Ali wanted to help. "Can I help you, Mom?" he asked. His mother smiled and said, "Of course, Ali! Please wash the vegetables for me." Ali washed the tomatoes, cucumbers, and carrots carefully. Then, he helped his mother cut the bread and put the plates on the table. When everything was ready, the kitchen looked clean and beautiful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali's mother was in the
 a) bedroom b) kitchen c) living room d) garden
- 2 Ali put the on the table.
 a) plates b) juice c) bags d) books

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who helped his mother in the kitchen?
- 4 What did Ali do?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Can I help you, mom

- 2 let's call the family for lunch

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Helping your mother"

lettuce – picked – washed



.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 3

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

neighborhood	الحي	food packages	عبوات الطعام
vegetables	خضراوات	elderly	كبير في السن
delivery	توصيل	promise	وعد
climb stairs	يصعد السلم	poor	فقير
market	سوق	sellers	بائعون

Lesson (2)

picnic	نزهة	a carton of milk	علبة لبن
a bar of chocolate	قطعة شوكولاتة	a slice of bread	شريحة خبز
a piece of cheese	قطعة جبن	a bottle of orange juice	زجاجة عصير برتقال
a kilo of apples	كيلو من التفاح	dessert	تحلية
butter	زبدة	a lot of	كثير من

Lesson (3)

Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	healthy	صحي
shiny	لامع	crunchy	مقرمش
colorful	ملون	fresh	طازج
a bunch of	مجموعة من	cooler	مبرد
captain	قائد	art teacher	مدرس الرسم

Lessons (4 and 5)

meal	وجبة	counter	منضدة المطبخ
lettuce	خس	importance	أهمية
cleanliness	النظافة	proudly	بفخر
responsible	مستول	delicious	لذيذ
sandwich	ساندوتش	plate	طبق

Language in Use

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns: are things we can count.

الأسماء المعدودة: هي الأشياء التي يمكننا عدّها.

We can use **a, an, or numbers** with them.

- يمكننا استخدام "a" أو "an" أو الأرقام معها.

e.g. a pen, an apple, two chairs, five books

Uncountable nouns: are things we cannot count because they don't have separate pieces.

الأسماء غير المعدودة: هي الأشياء التي لا يمكننا عدّها لأنها لا تتكون من أجزاء منفصلة.

We do **not** use **a, an, or numbers** with them.

- لا يمكننا استخدام "a" أو "an" أو الأرقام معها.

e.g. water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام بعض التعبيرات مع الأسماء الغير معدودة .

e.g. a carton of milk / a piece of cheese

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

neighborhood
vegetables
picnic
poor
market

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

عبوات الطعام
وعد
توصيل
كبير في السن
يصعد السلم

Lesson 2

picnic
a piece of cheese
a kilo of apples
picnic

قطعه شكولاتة
عبوة بسكويت
علبة لبن
زبدة

Lesson 3

share
crunchy
healthy
fresh
a bunch of

لامع
قائد
مبرد
حديقة الأزهر
ملون

Lessons 4 and 5

cleanliness
lettuce
responsible
proudly

منضدة المطبخ
وجهه
لذيذ
طبق

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصرفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

show

called out

give

knocked

packed

reminded

said

bring

line

set up



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Shopping for a picnic"

- Last weekend, my family and I went shopping for a picnic.
- We went to + اذكر أين ذهبتُم.
- We bought + اذكر ما اشتريتُم.
- We were very happy and excited.

"Shopping for a picnic"

Last weekend, my family and I went shopping for a picnic. We went to the supermarket to buy food and drinks. We bought sandwiches, fruits, juice, and some snacks. My father bought water and my mother chose some cakes. I carried the bags and helped them. We were very happy and excited for our picnic day!

How to write about "Helping my mother"

- I love to help my mother at home.
- I help + اذكر ما تقوم بفعله
- My mother feels + اذكر كيف تشعر والدتك عندما تساعدُها
- Helping my mother shows that I love and respect her.

"Helping my mother"

I love to help my mother at home. She works hard every day to take care of our family. I help her by cleaning my room and washing the dishes. Sometimes, I help her in the kitchen or carry the shopping bags. My mother feels happy when I help her, and I feel happy too. Helping my mother shows that I love and respect her.

1 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

climb the stairs – neighborhood – vegetables – food packages – elderly

- 1 Every weekend, we visit the to help people in need.
- 2 The **volunteers**^(*) carried filled with rice, beans, and canned food.
- 3 My brother helps the lady who lives next door.
- 4 The children had to to reach the top floor.
- 5 We bought fresh from the market to cook for lunch.

2 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

a bottle of juice – a slice of bread – a pack of biscuits

Nada was hungry, so she ate (1) with cheese. She smiled when she found (2) in her bag. After playing, she drank (3)

3 Fill in the blanks using the words in the box:

pack of – an – kilo of – bottle of – a

- 1 My father brought home a water for the trip.
- 2 He saw dog in the park.
- 3 The **grocer**^(*) sold me a tomatoes for the salad.
- 4 The teacher gave us a pencil colors for drawing.
- 5 I have apple in my bag.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ali helped his mother in the kitchen. (.....)
- 2 First, he washed his hands. (.....)
- 3 He placed the cheese on the counter. (.....)
- 4 Ali felt happy and excited at the end. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 I an elderly lady climb the stairs.
a) gave b) brought c) helped d) set
- 2 I need a of bread.
a) bottle b) slice c) bar d) glass
- 3 Ahmed if he could make the sandwiches.
a) played b) asked c) explained d) washed
- 4 I ate banana as a snack.
a) an b) some c) a d) pack
- 5 We drank a of milk for breakfast.
a) piece b) slice c) pack d) carton
- 6 Menna had a bar of chocolate for
a) dessert b) a sandwich c) vegetables d) packages

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

packages – share – neighborhood – water – market

Sharing with others is very important. We can (1)..... food, toys, and time together. Two weeks ago, I prepared food (2)..... for poor people in our (3)..... . I went to the (4)..... to buy everything they needed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

One afternoon, Omar's mother wanted to make a salad. She went to the kitchen and asked Omar to help her. Omar washed the vegetables, tomatoes, cucumbers, and carrots. Then he cut the vegetables carefully with his mother's help. After that, they added some fruits like apples to make the salad sweet. Omar mixed everything in a big bowl. The salad looked colorful and delicious! His mother said, "Thank you, Omar! You did a great job." Omar felt happy and proud.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar's mother wanted to make
 a) a cake b) a salad c) soup d) juice
- 2 A "bowl" is a big, round used to put food in. Super Question ?
 a) bottle b) container c) tube d) bar

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which fruits and vegetables did they use?
- 4 How did Omar feel after helping his mother?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I want a (bar of) water.
- 2 There is (an) table in the kitchen.
- 3 I want (a) bread and cheese, please.
- 4 I need to add (a) orange to the fruit salad.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 yara went to the supermarket to buy food and drinks
- 2 Do you want an apple, omar

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Shopping for a picnic"

fruits – a bottle of orange juice – a pack of biscuits





Listening

1 Listen and (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Jana and her brother prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. (.....)
- 2 Their mother helped them. (.....)
- 3 Their father bought everything they needed. (.....)
- 4 The families were very angry. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 I want to tell you how I for the picnic.
a) prepared b) played c) wanted d) ate
- 2 Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and to do it again.
a) helped b) played c) promised d) talked
- 3 Mona ate sandwich for breakfast.
a) a b) some c) an d) piece
- 4 Bananas, apples, and are healthy fruits.
a) cucumbers b) peaches c) carrots d) bread
- 5 I was thirsty, so I drank a of water.
a) glass b) pack c) kilo d) slice
- 6 The girl had orange in her lunchbox.
a) a b) some c) an d) any

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

decided – vegetables – went – carefully – played

Rana and her friend Salma like to help people. Last week, they (1)..... to help poor families in their neighborhood. They (2)..... to the market. They brought fruits and (3)..... . They packed the food (4)..... into bags. They delivered the bags to the poor families.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Nada. Last Friday, I helped my mother in the kitchen. First, I washed my hands carefully. Then, I placed the bread slices on the counter. My mother picked some vegetables and cheese. I washed the cucumbers and lettuce. My brother, Ahmed carefully made the sandwiches and held the plate proudly. We made healthy sandwiches together. I was very happy seeing the finished meal. We decided to call my family for lunch.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Nada helped her in the kitchen.
a) aunt b) brother c) father d) mother
- 2 Nada's mother picked some and cheese.
a) fish b) fruits c) vegetables d) bread

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who placed the bread slices on the counter?
- 4 What did Ahmed do?
- 5 What did Nada and her mother decide to do?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I have a (bottle) of chocolate.
- 2 I bought a (slice) of tomatoes.
- 3 I like to eat (an) cucumber.
- 4 I added a (carton) of cheese to my salad.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 what about you, Rana
- 2 We held a picnic in al-Azhar Park

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Sharing with families"

prepared – market – needs



.....

.....

.....



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهر.

A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 I bought a carton of (juice — milk — water) for tea.
- 2 My sister chose a (slice — bottle — bar) of chocolate.
- 3 There is a (pack — slice — bar) of biscuits on the table.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

packed — healthy — picnic — share

Ali : Hi, Sara! Are you ready for the school (1)

Sara : Yes, Ali! I'm very excited. I (2) my lunchbox.

Ali : What did you bring?

Sara : I brought (3) sandwiches and crunchy apples. What about you?

Ali : I brought juice and cookies. We can (4) our food!

C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We went to the (school — park — market) to buy everything.
- 2 I want (an — any — some) rice and milk.
- 3 Can I have a (piece — bar — carton) of cheese in my sandwich, please?
- 4 The teacher asked the group to set up a (dirty — small — healthy) lunch.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 She has a slice of water. (.....)
- 2 Salma eats a apple. (.....)
- 3 I bought a orange. (.....)
- 4 There is a carton of bread. (.....)

D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Hana. Last Friday, our class went on a school picnic. The teachers arranged everything very well. We went to a big park with green trees. Everyone brought some food from home. I had healthy sandwiches and crunchy apples. My friends brought juice, salad, and cookies. We sat together on the grass and started to share our food. After we finished eating, we packed the leftovers into bags.

A Write True or False:

- 1 The teachers arranged everything well. (.....)
- 2 Everyone brought some food from stores. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Last (week — Friday — month), our class went on a school picnic.
- 4 Hana brought healthy (salad — fish — sandwiches).
- 5 They (threw — packed — saved) the leftovers into bags.

E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

"School Picnic"

Al-Azhar Park — brought — arranged — dessert

.....

.....

.....

.....

Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- listen carefully to short texts or dialogs about celebrations and blogs.
- يستمع بعناية للنصوص القصيرة أو الحوارات المتعلقة بالاحتفالات والمدونات.
- identify key details such as events, dates, activities, and descriptions.
- يحدد التفاصيل المهمة مثل الأحداث، التواريخ، الأنشطة، والأوصاف.
- distinguish between the /s/, /z/, and /iz/ sounds in words.
- يميز بين أصوات /s/ و /z/ و /iz/ في الكلمات.

Speaking:

- talk about different celebrations using simple sentences.
- يتحدث عن الاحتفالات المختلفة باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events.
- يستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص، الأشياء، والأحداث.
- pronounce plural nouns with final -s correctly (/s/, /z/, /iz/).
- ينطق الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بـ -s بشكل صحيح (/s/, /z/, /iz/).

Reading:

- read short texts about different celebrations and understand the main idea.
- يقرأ نصوصًا قصيرة عن الاحتفالات المختلفة ويفهم الفكرة الرئيسية.
- identify adjectives and words with final -s in context.
- يحدد الصفات والكلمات التي تنتهي بـ -s في السياق.
- read and understand blog examples, recognizing greetings, body, and conclusion.
- يقرأ ويفهم أمثلة المدونات، مع التعرف على التحية والمحتوى والخاتمة.

Writing:

- write a blog about a celebration.
- يكتب مدونة عن احتفال.
- use adjectives to describe people, objects, and events.
- يستخدم الصفات لوصف الأشخاص، الأشياء، والأحداث.



Lesson 1

Family Gathering



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



exchange gifts
يتبادلون الهدايا



perform music
يعزفون/يعرضون الموسيقى



play a game
يلعبون لعبة



eat special food
يأكلون طعامًا خاصًا



socialize with friends
يتواصلون مع الأصدقاء

Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مذهل	oud	عود (آلة موسيقية)	fun (adj)	ممتع
chess	شطرنج	hide-and-seek	لعبة الغمضة	delicious (adj)	لذيذ
cousin	ابن/ابنة العمة/الخال	grilled chicken	دجاج مشوي	fruit salad	سلطة الفواكه

Expressions and Phrases

get to eat special food!	يتمكن/تُتاح له الفرصة لتناول طعام مميز!	socialize with	يتواصل اجتماعيًا مع
--------------------------	---	----------------	---------------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	talk يتكلم	talked
exchange يُبادل	exchanged	perform يُقدِّم / يعرض	performed
play يلعب	played	socialize يتواصل اجتماعيًا	socialized
clap يُصَفِّق	clapped	cheer يهتف بحماس	cheered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	sit يجلس	sat
win يفوز	won	bring يُحضِر	brought

A Day with Family and Friends! يوم مع العائلة والأصدقاء!



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Salma

Hi Amr! Did you enjoy the family gathering we had last weekend?

مرحبًا يا عمرو! هل استمتعت بالتجمع العائلي الذي أقمناه في نهاية الأسبوع الماضي؟

Yes, it was amazing! We sat together, talked, and even listened to my uncle perform music on his oud.

نعم، كان رائعًا! جلسنا معًا، وتحدثنا، بل واستمعنا إلى عمي وهو يعزف الموسيقى على العود.



Amr



Salma

I remember! Everyone clapped and cheered.

أتذكر! الجميع صفقوا وهتفوا بحماس.

The games were fun too. I played a game of chess with Kareem, and he won.

كانت الألعاب ممتعة أيضًا. لعبت مباراة شطرنج مع كريم، وقد فاز.



Amr



Salma

I played a game of hide-and-seek with my cousins, and we all enjoyed it.

أنا لعبت لعبة الغميضة مع أولاد عمي، واستمتعنا جميعًا بها.

The food was delicious. We got to eat special food like grilled chicken, and cake.

كان الطعام لذيذًا. تمكنا من تناول طعام مميز مثل الدجاج المشوي، والكيك.



Amr



Salma

Did you bring anything?

هل أحضرت شيئًا؟

I brought fruit salad, and everyone liked it. We also exchanged gifts and socialized with friends and family all day.

أحضرت سلطة فواكه، وقد أعجب بها الجميع. كما أننا تبادلنا الهدايا وتواصلنا مع الأصدقاء والعائلة طوال اليوم.



Amr



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Salma and Amr talked about a family gathering they had last weekend.
سلمى وعمرو تحدثا عن تجمع عائلي حدث في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضي.
- ✓ They sat together, talked, and listened to music played by Amr's uncle on the oud.
جلسوا معًا وتحدثوا واستمعوا إلى عزف عمر عمرو على العود.
- ✓ Everyone clapped and cheered after the music.
صفق الجميع وهتفوا بحماس بعد الموسيقى.
- ✓ Amr played chess with Kareem, and Kareem won.
لعب عمرو الشطرنج مع كريم، وكريم فاز.
- ✓ Salma played hide-and-seek with her cousins and they all enjoyed it.
لعبت سلمى الغمضة مع أولاد عمها، وجميعهم استمتعوا باللعبة.
- ✓ They ate special food like grilled chicken and cake.
أكلوا طعامًا مميزًا مثل الدجاج المشوى والكيك.
- ✓ Amr brought fruit salad.
أحضر عمرو سلطة فواكه.
- ✓ They exchanged gifts and socialized with family and friends all day.
تبادلوا الهدايا وتواصلوا مع العائلة والأصدقاء طوال اليوم.



Read again and answer:

- ① What special food did the family eat at the gathering?
- ② Who played with Kareem?



Write (T) true or (F) false: SB

- ① Salma and Amr were bored during the celebration. (.....)
- ② Amr played hide-and-seek with Kareem. (.....)
- ③ They socialized with friends and family all day. (.....)
- ④ Salma's uncle performed music for the family. (.....)



Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① After the music, everyone started to (sleep – cook – swim – clap) loudly.
- ② Kareem was good at chess, so he (won – lost – clapped – ate) the game.
- ③ We (socialized – played – clapped – exchanged) hide-and-seek in the garden.
- ④ During the celebration, they (exchanged – cooked – watched – washed) gifts with each other.
- ⑤ The food was so (loud – small – delicious – bad) and everyone liked it.
- ⑥ My uncle can (perform – cook – socialize – win) music on the oud.



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Amr played a game of chess with Salma. (.....)
- 2 Salma played hide-and-seek with her parents. (.....)
- 3 The family ate grilled chicken and cake. (.....)
- 4 Salma's mother and grandmother cooked the chicken in the morning. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The boys will music on the stage this evening.
a) sell b) take c) eat d) perform
- 2 Eslam talks and plays with his friends. He likes to
a) sleep b) eat c) socialize d) read
- 3 During Ramadan, families together to eat special food.
a) sell b) gather c) do d) play
- 4 When people gifts, they show love and friendship.
a) exchange b) fight c) study d) exercise
- 5 You need a ball if you want to a game.
a) play b) write c) listen d) bake
- 6 needs players who can run and hide well. Super Question ?
a) Basketball b) Hide-and-seek c) Volleyball d) Chess

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

special – music – exchange – game – friends

Celebrations are special days for everyone. People like to perform (1) and dance happily. They often eat (2) food with their families and socialize with (3) during the celebration. At the end of the day, they (4) gifts to show love and joy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, we had a fun day at our school. We went to the playground early. Everyone was happy and excited. First, we watched a fun show. It was really funny and there was a clown that made us laugh. Then, we played games like football and hide-and-seek. At lunch, we ate yummy food and talked with our friends. It was a great day for students and teachers!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
 a) the playground b) a fun day c) a clown d) yummy food
- 2 The underlined word "yummy" means
 a) delicious b) hot c) cold d) salty

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who made the children laugh?

- 4 What games did they play?

- 5 What did they do at lunchtime?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 it's fun to exchange gifts with family

- 2 do you play hide-and-seek

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"A family gathering"

perform – game – gift



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 2 End-of-Year Party



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



wear special clothes
يرتدى ملابس خاصة



clap
تصفق



take photos
يلتقط الصور



fireworks
ألعاب نارية

Extra vocabulary

playground	ساحة اللعب	celebration	احتفال	colorful balloons	بالونات ملونة
fence	سور	shiny lights	أضواء لامعة	loud (adj)	عالٍ
clothes	ملابس	band	فرقة موسيقية	carefully	بحذر / بعناية
enormous (adj)	ضخم	bright (adj)	ساطع / مشرق	unforgettable (adj)	لا ينسى

Expressions and Phrases

look beautiful	يبدو جميلاً	during the celebration	أثناء الاحتفال
in the center of	في المنتصف / المركز	ready for	مستعد / جاهز لـ
all around the place	في كل أرجاء المكان	make short videos	يصنع فيديوهات قصيرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

smile	يبتسم	smiled	laugh	يضحك	laughed
place	يضع	placed	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

hang	يعلق	hung	wear	يرتدى	wore
sing	يغنى	sang	take	يأخذ	took
come	يأتى	came	light up	يضيء / يُنير	lit up

Unforgettable Celebration

احتفالاً لا ينسى



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What makes the end-of-year celebration fun for you?

SB

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

The school **playground**⁽¹⁾ looked beautiful during the **celebration**⁽²⁾.

There were **colorful balloons**⁽³⁾ hanging from the **fences**⁽⁴⁾ and shiny lights all around the place.

A **band**⁽⁵⁾ played a loud song.

The students wore their special clothes and smiled happily. Everyone clapped, laughed, and enjoyed the music together.

In the center of the playground, a large cake was placed carefully on an **enormous**⁽⁶⁾ table.

Our teacher was very happy because the playground looked clean, **bright**⁽⁷⁾, and ready for the party. We played games, sang songs, and socialized with our friends.

Many students took photos to remember the special day, and some even made short videos. The best part came at night when the **fireworks**⁽⁸⁾ started. They **lit up**⁽⁹⁾ the sky with beautiful colors, and everyone cheered loudly. It was an unforgettable celebration that we will always remember.



- | | |
|-----|-----------------|
| (1) | ساحة اللعب |
| (2) | احتفال |
| (3) | بالونات ملونة |
| (4) | أسوار |
| (5) | فرقة موسيقية |
| (6) | ضخم |
| (7) | مشرق |
| (8) | ألعاب نارية |
| (9) | أضاءوا / أناروا |

بدأت ساحة المدرسة جميلة أثناء الاحتفال. كانت هناك بالونات ملونة معلقة من الأسوار، وأضواء لامعة في كل مكان. عزفت الفرقة الموسيقية أغنية بصوت عالٍ. ارتدى الطلاب ملابسهم الخاصة وابتسموا بسعادة. صفق الجميع، وضحكوا، واستمتعوا بالموسيقى معاً. في وسط ساحة المدرسة، وُضعت كعكة كبيرة على طاولة ضخمة. كانت معلمتنا سعيدة جداً لأن الساحة كانت نظيفة ومضيئة وجاهزة للحفلة. لعبنا الألعاب، وغنينا الأغاني، وتواصلنا مع أصدقائنا. التقط العديد من الطلاب صوراً ليتذكروا هذا اليوم المميز، وبعضهم صنع مقاطع فيديو قصيرة. وجاء أفضل جزء في الليل عندما بدأت الألعاب النارية. لقد أضاءت السماء بألوان جميلة، وهتف الجميع بصوت عالٍ. كان احتفالاً لا ينسى وستذكره دائماً.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ① The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. مَلْعَب المدرسة كان جميلًا أثناء الاحتفال.
- ② There were colorful balloons and shiny lights everywhere. كان هناك بالونات ملوّنة وأضواء لامعة في كل مكان.
- ③ The students wore special clothes and smiled happily. ارتدى الطلاب ملابس خاصة وابتسموا بسعادة.
- ④ A large cake was on an enormous table in the center. كانت هناك كعكة كبيرة على طاولة ضخمة في المنتصف.
- ⑤ The teacher was happy because the playground was clean and bright. كان المعلم سعيدًا لأن الملعب كان نظيفًا ومضيئًا.
- ⑥ The students played games, sang songs, and took photos. لعب الطلاب الألعاب وغنّوا الأغاني والتقطوا الصور.
- ⑦ The fireworks lit up the sky with beautiful colors. أضاءت الألعاب النارية السماء بألوان جميلة.
- ⑧ Everyone had fun and will always remember the celebration. استمتع الجميع وسيتذكرون هذا الاحتفال دائمًا.



Read again and answer the questions: SB

① Where did the celebration take place?

.....

② What was placed on the enormous table?

.....

③ Why was the teacher happy?

.....

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① We wear special (games – clothes – food – songs) at parties.
- ② We saw colorful (flowers – fireworks – cakes – tables) in the sky at night.
- ③ The students (slept – cheered – drew – read) after the show.
- ④ Many people (take – eat – sleep – drive) photos to remember the special day.

Language in Use

Adjectives

الصفات

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. They tell us what something looks, feels, sounds, or smells like.

الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأسماء. هي تخبرنا كيف يبدو الشيء، أو ما إحساسه، أو صوته، أو رائحته.

e.g. The **colorful** balloons flew in the air. ("colorful" describes "balloons")

Some adjectives describe people . بعض الصفات تصف الناس	Some adjectives describe objects . بعض الصفات تصف الأشياء	Some adjectives describe places . بعض الصفات تصف الأماكن	Some adjectives describe feelings or events . بعض الصفات تصف المشاعر أو الأحداث
tall طويل	big كبير	quiet هادئ	exciting مثير
short قصير	small صغير	busy مشغول	fun ممتع
kind طيب	colorful ملون	peaceful هادئ	amazing مذهل
friendly ودود	shiny ساطع	beautiful جميل	wonderful مدهش
happy سعيد	soft ناعم	crowded مزدحم	boring ممل



Got it:

The garden is very (beauty).

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (beautiful) لأنها صفة تصف الاسم garden، وليست beauty لأنها اسم.



Note

Some adjectives can describe people, places, or things.

بعض الصفات يمكن أن تصف الأشخاص أو الأماكن أو الأشياء.

- She is a **beautiful** girl. (person)
- It is a **beautiful** park. (place)
- This is a **beautiful** picture. (thing)

✓ **Checkpoint** Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 We wore (jump – colorful – care – color) clothes at the party.
- 2 The students are (happy – big – hard – wooden) today.
- 3 The elephant is (tiny – small – thin – big).

Quick Practice on Adjectives

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The children sang songs.
a) happiest b) happy c) happiness d) sadness
- 2 The man is very to animals.
a) kind b) kindness c) kindly d) kinds
- 3 The turtles are very
a) fast b) big c) slow d) black
- 4 The party was
a) wonder b) wonders c) wander d) wonderful
- 5 The town is small, but
a) peace b) peaceful c) peacefully d) friend

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My cousins are very (friend) at family gatherings.
- 2 We watched a (wonder) show at school.
- 3 The birthday cake looked so (color).
- 4 The fun day was very (excite).
- 5 The park was (crowd) with people enjoying the games.
- 6 The story we read was (interest) and funny.
- 7 Everyone felt (tire) after the long day.
- 8 My teacher is kind and (help).
- 9 The gathering was (bore), and a lot of people left.
- 10 My sister wore a (beauty) dress to the party.
- 11 The garden looks (color) in spring.
- 12 The mountain view was really (peace).
- 13 The children were very (happiness) on their trip.
- 14 I wore my new (shine) shoes to the party.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We had a big for my sister's birthday.
a) homework b) celebration c) game d) book
- 2 Everyone started to after the song.
a) clap b) cook c) write d) sleep
- 3 During Eid, families often wear special for the holiday.
a) places b) food c) clothes d) parties
- 4 We always take to remember happy moments at birthday parties.
a) photos b) tables c) classes d) rackets
- 5 The children ran and played happily in the
a) classroom b) library c) playground d) museum
- 6 The children were excited when the started.
a) clouds b) books c) chairs d) fireworks
- 7 We after our friend won the race.
a) drew b) slept c) cheered d) drank
- 8 At the festival, many colorful flew in the sky.
a) shoes b) chairs c) balloons d) sandwiches

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bright – clapped – clothes – unforgettable – remember

SB

During the school party, the sky was filled with fireworks that lit up the playground. Everyone smiled and (1) It was an (2) celebration, and I will always (3) the fun we had, singing, playing games, and enjoying the (4), colorful lights.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hamza was very happy because there was a big celebration at his house. The sky lit up with beautiful fireworks, and the garden was full of colorful balloons. Everyone was excited to see the enormous cake, and Hamza **could not wait** to taste it. He smiled and laughed with his friends while they played games and sang songs. It was a fun day, full of joy, and Hamza enjoyed the party very much.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hamza "could not wait" to taste the cake. This means he was
 a) unhappy b) excited c) bored d) clean
- 2 The general idea of the text is about
 a) a celebration b) a garden
 c) fireworks d) an enormous cake

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why was everyone excited?

.....

- 4 Where did Hamza and his friends play games?

.....

- 5 What was the garden full of?

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The elephant is (bigger).
- 2 My friends are always (help) when I need them.
- 3 The playground looks (cleanest) and ready for games.
- 4 The sky was full of (color) fireworks.
- 5 The fireworks were very (brightness) last night. Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 who goes to the library on thursday?

.....

- 2 malek will wear special clothes today

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"A fun celebration"

fireworks – cake – take photos

.....





Lesson 3

Birthday Celebration



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



hang shiny ribbons
يعلّق شرائط لامعة



candles
شموع



decorate
يزيّن



cheerful
مبهج



wrap giveaways
يعلّف الهدايا



guests
ضيوف

Extra vocabulary

giveaways	هدايا	tasty (adj)	لذيذ	gift	هدية
ribbons	شرائط	joy	فرحه	laughter	ضحك

Expressions and Phrases

start getting prepared يبدأ في الاستعداد / التحضير	on the top في الأعلى	share his happiness يشارك سعادته
at the end في النهاية	make a wish يتمنى أمنية	full of ممتلئ بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	decorate يزيّن	decorated
help يساعد	helped	bake يخبز	baked
wrap يلف / يعلّف	wrapped	arrive يصل	arrived
join ينضم	joined	receive يستلم	received

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	blow out يطفئ	blew out

Zein's Birthday Celebration احتفال عيد ميلاد زين

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Warm up How do you celebrate your birthday?

SB

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and started getting prepared for the big day. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and **decorated**⁽¹⁾ it with colorful balloons. His father helped him hang the balloons. They hung shiny **ribbons**⁽²⁾ and bright lights to make the house **cheerful**⁽³⁾.



Zein's mother baked a delicious cake, and he put candles on the top. In the afternoon, Zein wrapped the **giveaways**⁽⁴⁾ he had bought for his friends because he wanted to share his happiness. When the **guests**⁽⁵⁾ arrived, everyone wore a **party hat**⁽⁶⁾ and joined the fun. They sang songs, played games, and enjoyed tasty food. At the end, Zein **blew out**⁽⁷⁾ the candles, **made a wish**⁽⁸⁾, and received **gifts**⁽⁹⁾ from his friends. It was a wonderful birthday celebration full of joy and laughter.

- | | |
|-----|-------------|
| (1) | زين |
| (2) | شرائط |
| (3) | مبهج |
| (4) | هدايا |
| (5) | ضيوف |
| (6) | قبعة الحفلة |
| (7) | أطفأ |
| (8) | تمنى أمنية |
| (9) | هدايا |

في يوم الجمعة الماضي، احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل. في الصباح، استيقظ متحمساً وبدأ بالتحضير لهذا اليوم الكبير. بمساعدة أخته، نظف غرفة المعيشة وزينها بالبالونات الملونة.

ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات. علقوا شرائط لامعة وأضواء ساطعة لجعل المنزل مبهجاً. خبزت والدته زين كعكة لذيذة، ووضع عليها زين الشموع. في فترة الظهيرة، غلف زين الهدايا التي اشتراها لأصدقائه لأنه أراد مشاركة فرحته. عندما وصل الضيوف، ارتدى الجميع قبعة الحفلة وانضموا إلى المرح. غنوا الأغاني، ولعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام الشهى.

في النهاية، نفخ زين الشموع، وتمنى أمنية، وتلقى الهدايا من أصدقائه. كان احتفال عيد ميلاد زين رائعاً ممتلئاً بالفرح والضحك.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Zein celebrated his birthday at home with his family and friends.
احتفل زين بعيد ميلاده في المنزل مع عائلته وأصدقائه.
- ✓ He and his sister decorated the living room with colorful balloons and shiny ribbons.
هو وأخته زينًا غرفة المعيشة بالبالونات الملونة والشرائط اللامعة.
- ✓ His father helped him hang the balloons.
ساعده والده في تعليق البالونات.
- ✓ His mother baked a delicious cake for the celebration.
خبزت والدته كعكة لذيذة للاحتفال.
- ✓ Zein wrapped giveaways for his friends to share his happiness.
لف زين هدايا لأصدقائه ليشاركهم سعادته.
- ✓ The guests arrived, wore party hats, and joined the fun.
وصل الضيوف، وارتدوا قبعات الحفلة، وشاركوا في المرح.
- ✓ Everyone sang songs, played games, and enjoyed tasty food.
غنى الجميع الأغاني، ولعبوا الألعاب، واستمتعوا بالطعام اللذيذ.
- ✓ At the end, Zein blew out the candles, made a wish, and received gifts.
في النهاية، أطفأ زين الشموع، وتمنى أمنية، وتلقى الهدايا.
- ✓ It was a wonderful celebration full of joy and laughter.
كانت حفلة رائعة ممتلئة بالفرح والضحك.



Read again and answer the questions:

- 1 Where did Zein celebrate his birthday?
- 2 Which item did Zein put on the cake?
- 3 Who wore a party hat during the celebration?



Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Zein wrapped giveaways to (share – forget – hide – stop) with his friends.
- 2 The children laughed and clapped because they felt (tired – excited – angry – bored).
- 3 Everyone wore a (ribbon – party hat – candle – gift) and joined the fun.
- 4 The house looked very (sad – boring – cheerful – dark) with shiny lights and balloons.
- 5 We decorated the living room with colorful (candles – ribbons – hats – gifts).

Pronunciation

Suffix - Final -s sounds in plural

اللاحقة - أصوات الحرف «s» في نهاية الأسماء الجمع



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

- We use plural forms of nouns when we are talking about more than one person, animal, thing, or object.

نستخدم صيغ الجمع للأسماء حينما نتحدث عن أكثر من شخص أو حيوان أو شيء أو غرض.

Example with people	Example with animals	Example with objects
one friend → friends أصدقاء (more than one) (أكثر من واحد)	one cat → cats قططة واحدة (more than one) (أكثر من واحد)	one book → books كتاب واحد (more than one) (أكثر من واحد)

The final -s can be pronounced differently depending on the word.

The final -s sounds in plural like

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
ينطق حرف (s) بصوت /s/ إذا انتهى آخر صوت في الاسم المفرد بأحد الأصوات التالية:	ينطق حرف (s) بصوت /z/ إذا انتهى آخر صوت في الاسم المفرد بأحد الأصوات التالية:	ينطق حرف (s) بصوت (ɪz) إذا انتهى آخر صوت في الاسم المفرد بأحد الأصوات التالية:
/p/, /k/, /f/, /t/, /θ/	/b/, /g/, /v/, /ð/, /d/, /m/, /n/, /ŋ/, /l/, /r/, vowel sounds	/s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/
guests books	ribbons candles	houses boxes



Tip!

- When the noun (subject) is singular, we usually add "-s" to the verb.

عندما يكون الاسم مفردًا، فإننا عادةً نضيف "-s" إلى الفعل.

Example: The girl hides under the table.

- When the noun (subject) is plural, we do not add "-s" to the verb.

عندما يكون الاسم (الفاعل) جمعًا، لا نضيف "-s" إلى الفعل.

Example: The boys kick the ball.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Last Friday, Ahmed his birthday with his family.
a) celebrated b) ate c) helped d) wrapped
- 2 We put on the top of the cake before singing "Happy Birthday".
a) party hat b) ribbons c) candles d) cheerful.
- 3 We always the room before a special event.
a) decorate b) hang c) celebrate d) dance
- 4 Ali wanted to give small to everyone who came to his party.
a) guests b) windows c) ribbons d) giveaways
- 5 She out the candles, and made a wish.
a) grew b) blew c) drank d) sat
- 6 Everyone clapped, laughed, and felt very during the party.
a) cheerful b) worried c) sad d) angry
- 7 The birthday party was a fun with games, songs, and food.
a) giveaways b) birthday cake c) party hat d) celebration
- 8 His mother used shiny to make the living room look nice.
a) candles b) ribbons c) birthday cake d) party hat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hang – celebration – candles – guests – delicious

Last Friday, Hussein prepared his house for his birthday party. He invited all his friends to join the (1) His mother baked a (2) cake, and everyone enjoyed eating it. Hussein helped his father (3) colorful balloons and decorations around the room. When the (4) arrived, they were happy to see the cheerful decorations and joined the fun.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Eslam celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and helped his sister clean and decorate the living room with colorful balloons. His mother baked a delicious cake, and his father helped hang bright lights. In the afternoon, Eslam's friends came to the party. They sang songs, played games, and ate tasty food. At the end, Eslam blew out the candles and made a wish. It was a joyful day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
 - a) Eslam's birthday party
 - b) a cake
 - c) decorations
 - d) Eslam's friends
- 2 Eslam decorated the living room with
 - a) flowers
 - b) chairs
 - c) balloons
 - d) gifts

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did Eslam celebrate his birthday?
.....
- 4 Who baked the cake for Eslam?
.....
- 5 What did Eslam do at the end of the party?
.....

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we put candles on the birthday cake
.....
- 2 did the guests enjoy the party
.....

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"My birthday party"
celebrate – cake – giveaways





Lessons 4 and 5 Labor Day



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary



May
مايو



event
حدث / احتفال



workers
عمال

Extra vocabulary

card	بطاقة / كارت	special (adj)	خاص	job	وظيفة
efforts	جهود	neighborhood	حي / منطقة سكنية	together	معًا
soldiers	جنود	moments	لحظات	brave (adj)	شجاع
country	بلد / وطن	Sinai	سيناء	hero	بطل

Expressions and Phrases

hold a small celebration

يقيم احتفالاً صغيراً

feel proud

يشعر بالفخر

a special day to remember

يوم مميز لتذكره

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

honor

يكرم

honored

thank

يشكر

thanked

appreciate

يقدر

appreciated

free

يحرر

freed

wave

يلوح

waved

remember

يتذكر

remembered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

make

يصنع

made

hold

يقيم

held



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. في الأول من مايو نحتفل بعيد العمال.
- ✓ It is a special day to honor workers and their hard work. إنه يوم خاص لتكريم العمال وجهودهم الكبيرة.
- ✓ My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood. انضممت أنا وأسرتي إلى احتفال صغير في حيّنا.
- ✓ We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. رأينا العمال يُشكرون على أعمالهم.
- ✓ I made a colorful card for my father and teacher. صنعت بطاقة ملوّنة لوالدي ومعلمي.
- ✓ Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments. استمتع الجميع بالاحتفال وشاركوا لحظات سعيدة معًا.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

A blog post مدونة

Title العنوان

Celebrating Labor Day

Your name اسمك

By Fady

May 1, 2025

Introduction المقدمة

On May 1st, we celebrate **Labor Day**⁽¹⁾. It is a special day to **honor**⁽²⁾ **workers**⁽³⁾ and all the hard work they do. My family and I joined a small

Body with details

event⁽⁴⁾ in our **neighborhood**⁽⁵⁾.

الموضوع مع التفاصيل

We saw workers being thanked for their **jobs**⁽⁶⁾. I made a colorful **card**⁽⁷⁾ to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy **moments**⁽⁸⁾ together.

Conclusion الخاتمة

I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day.

Everyone should **appreciate**⁽⁹⁾ workers and their **efforts**⁽¹⁰⁾ every day!

Add a picture ضع صورة



الاحتفال بعيد العمال

بقلم فادي

١ مايو ٢٠٢٥

في الأول من مايو، نحتفل بعيد العمال. إنه يوم خاص لتكريم العمال وكل الجهد الذي يبذلونه. انضممت أنا وعائلتي إلى حدث في حيّنا. رأينا العمال يُشكرون على أعمالهم. صنعت بطاقة ملوّنة لأقْدَمها لأبي ولعملي. استمتع الجميع بالاحتفالات وشاركوا لحظات سعيدة معًا. قضيت وقتًا رائعًا في الاحتفال بيوم العمال. يجب على الجميع أن يقدّروا العمال وجهودهم كل يوم.

How to write a blog post

كيفية كتابة مدونة

Title

اكتب العنوان

Sinai Liberation Day عيد تحرير سيناء

Your name

اكتب اسمك

By

Your name

Introduction

اكتب جملة بسيطة
توضّح للقارئ ما
تدور حوله المدونة

April 25, 2025

On April 25th, we celebrate Sinai Liberation Day. It is a special day to remember when Sinai was freed.

Body with
details اكتب
الجزء الأساسمن الموضوع الذي
يحتوي على الأفكار
والتفاصيل الداعمة.

My school held a small celebration in the playground. We sang songs and waved flags. I learned about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai. Everyone felt proud and happy to celebrate our country.

Conclusion

اكتب جملاً قصيرة
تلخّص فيها فكرتك
وتوضح ما تعلمته
أو شعورك في
النهاية.

I had a wonderful time celebrating Sinai Liberation Day. Everyone should remember and honor the heroes of our country!



Add a

picture

ضع صورته

Your turn SB

Write a blog post of about 24-30 words about a special event you enjoyed:



Lessons 4 and 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We waved on Sinai Liberation Day.
a) balloons b) flags c) ribbons d) hats
- 2 Day is a day to thank workers.
a) Birthday b) Eid c) Christmas d) Labor
- 3 We celebrate Labor Day in the month of
a) March b) May c) July d) December
- 4 Many workers help build our
a) country b) game c) toy d) song
- 5 The students their teachers' efforts.
a) cut b) draw c) wash d) appreciate
- 6 It is a special day to workers.
a) honor b) hang c) color d) cry
- 7 Everyone should appreciate workers and their
a) cards b) bags c) efforts d) candles
- 8 My school a small celebration in the playground. Super Question ?
a) held b) threw c) smiled d) waved

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

country – flags – celebration – special – heroes

On April 25th, we celebrate Sinai Liberation Day. It is a (1) day to remember when Sinai was freed. My school held a small (2) in the playground. We waved (3) and sang songs. I learned about the brave soldiers who helped free Sinai. Everyone should remember and honor the (4) of our country.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I feel proud of our country. On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day to **honor** workers and all the hard work they do. My family and I joined a small event in our neighborhood. We saw workers being thanked for their jobs. I made a colorful card to give to my father and teacher. Everyone enjoyed the celebrations and shared happy moments together. I had a wonderful time celebrating Labor Day. Everyone should appreciate workers and their efforts every day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) a birthday party b) Labor Day
 c) a school trip d) a sports day
- 2 If we "**honor**" our soldiers, we them.
 a) respect b) see c) help d) join

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Omar and his family go to celebrate Labor Day?

- 4 How did everyone feel during the celebrations?

- 5 Who did Omar make cards for?

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 the egyptian flag made us proud.

- 2 how do you celebrate your-birthday

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Celebrating Labor Day"

special – event – appreciate



Unit 4

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

exchange gifts	يتبادل الهدايا	perform music	يعرض/يعرض الموسيقى
eat special food	يأكل طعامًا خاصًا	socialize with friends	يتواصل مع الأصدقاء
amazing	مذهل	fun	ممتع
chess	شطرنج	oud	عود (آلة موسيقية)
hide-and-seek	لعبة العُصِيضة	delicious	لذيذ
grilled chicken	دجاج مشوي	fruit salad	سلطة الفواكه

Lesson (2)

wear special clothes	يرتدي ملابس خاصة	fireworks	ألعاب نارية
take photos	يلتقط الصور	clap	يصفق
playground	ساحة اللعب	celebration	احتفال
colorful balloons	بالونات ملونة	fence	سور
shiny lights	أضواء لامعة	loud	عالٍ
enormous	ضخم	bright	ساطع/مشرق
unforgettable	لا ينسى	together	معًا

Lesson (3)

hang shiny ribbons	يعلق شرائط لامعة	candles	شموع
decorate	يزين	laughter	ضحك
excited	متحمس	gift	هدية
cheerful	مبهج	giveaways	هدايا
guests	ضيوف	tasty	لذيذ
ribbons	شرائط	joy	فرح

Lessons (4 and 5)

Sinai Liberation Day	عيد تحرير سيناء	hero	بطل
Labor Day	عيد العمال	workers	العمال
event	حدث / احتفال	May	مايو
efforts	جهود	soldiers	جنود

Language in Use

Adjectives

Describing people	Describing objects	Describing places	Describing feelings/events
tall, short, kind, friendly, happy	big, small, colorful, shiny, soft	quiet, busy, peaceful, beautiful, crowded	exciting, fun, amazing, wonderful, boring

Unit 4

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
chess	لعبة الغميضة
amazing	يتبادل الهدايا
perform music	لذيذ
play a game	دجاج مشوى
eat special food	يتواصل مع الأصدقاء

Lesson 2

wear special clothes	ألعاب نارية
take photos	ساحة اللعب
celebration	ساطع/مشرق
colorful balloons	ضخم
clap	بعناية

Lesson 3

ribbons	ضحك
cheerful	تمنى أمنية
candles	فرح
giveaways	لذيذ
guests	ممثل بـ

Lessons 4 and 5

neighborhood	مايو
flag	جهود
event	شجاع
soldiers	بطل
card	خاص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصرفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

win	clapped
socialize	hung
	wore

Present

Past

blow out	celebrated
decorate	held
	wrapped

لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a family gathering (using adjectives)

- Start with when and where you were. ابدأ بوقت ومكان اللقاء.
- Talk about a main person or the event. تكلم عن شخص رئيسي أو عن الحدث.
- Say something about your relatives or friends. قل شيئاً عن أقاربك أو أصدقائك.
- Say how you felt. قل شعورك أثناء اللقاء.
- End with your opinion. اختتم برأيك عن اليوم.

"A family gathering"

Last weekend, I went to a family gathering at my uncle's house. My uncle was friendly and the event was fun. My cousins were helpful and cheerful. I felt happy at the gathering. It was a great day!

How to write about a special celebration you enjoyed

- Say when it was and where you went. اكتب متى كان اليوم وأين ذهبت.
- Say what you did first. اكتب أول شيء فعلته.
- Say what you did next. اكتب ما فعلته بعد ذلك.
- Say how you felt. اكتب شعورك في النهاية.

"A special celebration you enjoyed"

Last weekend, I went to the park with my family to celebrate my birthday. First, we played fun games and took beautiful photos. Next, we ate tasty sandwiches and drank fresh juice under the big trees. Everyone was happy and excited. I felt joyful because it was a wonderful day that I will always remember.

How to write about your birthday party (using adjectives)

- Start with when and where. اكتب متى وأين كانت الحفلة.
- Describe the decorations. اكتب صفات للزينة مثل الألوان والجمال.
- Say who came and what you did. اكتب من جاء وماذا فعلت معهم.
- Talk about the food and cake. اكتب صفات للطعام أو الكعكة.
- End with your feeling and opinion. اكتب شعورك في النهاية ورأيك في الحفلة.

"My birthday party"

Yesterday, I had a fun birthday party at home. The room was colorful with beautiful balloons. My friends came, and we played fun games. We ate tasty food and a delicious cake. We were happy and excited. It was a wonderful day!

1 Fill in the blanks using the phrases in the box:

exchange gifts – perform music – eat special food – play a game – socialize with friends

- 1 During the family gathering, we and laugh together.
- 2 At the party, the children like to like football and hide-and-seek.
- 3 The band will on the stage for everyone to enjoy.
- 4 Families such as rice, meat, and delicious desserts.
- 5 On holidays, many people to show love and kindness.

2 Rearrange the words to make a sentence:

- 1 a / kind / is / Reem / girl
.....
- 2 went / to / We / park / big / the
.....
- 3 had / an / day / exciting / We
.....
- 4 found / box / a / brown / I
.....
- 5 school / fun / was / The / trip
.....

3 Choose and write the correct word:

- 1 The flowers in the garden are (beautiful / run).
- 2 I wore my (yellow / quickly) hat at school.
- 3 The cake tastes (delicious / jump).
- 4 My little brother has a (small / run) toy car.
- 5 The sky is (blue / happy) today.

4 Circle the adjectives in each sentence:

- 1 The kind teacher helped all the students with their work.
- 2 I have a colorful kite that flies high in the sky.
- 3 I live in a peaceful village with many tall palm trees.
- 4 She felt excited when she saw her friends at the park.
- 5 The wonderful school concert made everyone smile.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Zein celebrated his birthday at the park. (.....)
- 2 Zein decorated his room with ribbons and balloons. (.....)
- 3 His family baked a delicious cake. (.....)
- 4 Everyone felt bored and sad. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 We exchanged gifts and with friends and family all day.
a) socialized b) cried c) studied d) washed
- 2 My uncle can music very well on his oud.
a) draw b) perform c) cook d) write
- 3 On his birthday, Adam gave his friends beautiful to take home.
a) guests b) giveaways c) fences d) lights
- 4 The lion is a very animal.
a) strong b) softly c) strength d) stronger
- 5 The beach was
a) beautifully b) beauty c) beautiful d) beautify
- 6 We hung the ribbons on the wall.
a) dark b) cold c) salty d) shiny

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

grilled – sang – hide-and-seek – gifts – special

Last weekend, my family had a fun party at home. We played (1) in the garden and laughed a lot. Then we ate (2) food together. My mother cooked (3) chicken. After lunch, we (4) songs and danced happily. It was a wonderful day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Workers are very important in our community. Each worker has a job that helps others. Teachers help students learn new things, and doctors take care of sick people. Farmers grow fruits and vegetables for us to eat, and builders make houses and schools. Drivers take people to work and home safely. Every worker does something useful. They work hard every day to make our lives better. We should always respect, thank, and **appreciate** all workers for their great jobs.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Doctors take care of sick
 a) cars b) animals c) farms d) people
- 2 If we **appreciate** workers, we them.
 a) respect b) reduce c) share d) promise

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why are workers important?
- 4 Who helps students learn new things?
- 5 What do farmers grow for us to eat?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The teacher was very (**help**) during the art class.
- 2 The flowers in the garden are (**beauty**).
- 3 My father is very (**kindness**) to everyone.
- 4 The movie we watched was (**bore**), so I fell asleep.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 hamza wrapped presents to give to his friends
- 2 did you enjoy the party

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"A happy family gathering"

game – socialize – gifts





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Last year, I celebrated Labor Day on May 1st with my family. (.....)
- 2 We watched a program about animals in Egypt. (.....)
- 3 We went to the beach for a picnic. (.....)
- 4 My brother played with balloons. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 We should always the hard work of others.
a) forget b) ignore c) appreciate d) dislike
- 2 My mother the present in colorful paper.
a) baked b) wrapped c) washed d) drew
- 3 The man is very to animals.
a) kind b) kindness c) kindly d) kinds
- 4 The turtles are very
a) fast b) big c) slow d) black
- 5 The party was
a) wonder b) wonders c) wander d) wonderful
- 6 When people gifts, they show love and friendship.
a) exchange b) fight c) study d) exercise

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

fireworks – ribbons – party hat – nice – clapped

Last night, we had a big celebration at school. We helped decorate the playground with colorful (1) and bright lights. Everyone (2), laughed, and enjoyed the music together. We wore a (3) and danced. At the end of the celebration, beautiful (4) lit up the sky. It was an exciting night.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last Thursday, our class won the best decoration prize. We worked together to make the classroom look bright and beautiful. We used colorful balloons, ribbons, and pictures on the walls. Everyone helped clean and arrange the tables. Our teachers

visited the classrooms and liked our work very much. When they said we were the winners, we clapped and cheered. It was an exciting and happy day for all of us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "exciting" means
 a) boring b) fun c) sad d) quiet
- 2 The class decorated the room with
 a) books b) ribbons c) toys d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did the classroom win the best decoration prize?

- 4 What did the teachers do when they visited the classrooms?

- 5 How did the students feel when they won?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My family is very (happiness) when we spend time together.
- 2 This cake tastes (sweetly) and fresh.
- 3 The lights were (color).
- 4 We had a (wonder) time at the family gathering.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 where do your friends live

- 2 the cake is delicious

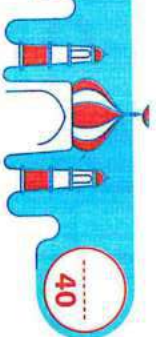
7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"My birthday party"

balloons – cake – songs





لنحكي هذه القصة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهرس.

A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(الإجابة راجع نص المستمع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The school playground looked (ugly – beautiful – boring) during the celebration.
- 2 There were (colorful – empty – broken) balloons hanging from the fences.
- 3 The students wore their (dirty – old – special) clothes and smiled happily.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

wonderful – unforgettable – like – celebration

Farida: How was the school (1), Asmaa?

Asmaa: It was (2)! Everyone was so happy.

Farida: What did you (3) the most?

Asmaa: The music and lights! It was an (4) celebration.

C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 At the party, we decided to play a (book – game – movie) of chess.
- 2 Everyone (cried – slept – clapped) when the winner got a prize.
- 3 The weather is (rain – quickly – sunny) today, so we can play outside.
- 4 The story is very (funny – quickly – loud).

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 My mother cooked a taste meal for lunch.
- 2 It was a rain day, so we stayed inside.
- 3 The beach was peace and quiet.
- 4 The new student is very friend and polite.

D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, my family and I traveled to Alexandria. My grandparents were very happy to see us. My uncle and aunt prepared a big lunch with rice, chicken, and salad. My cousins and I played games and took funny photos together. In the evening, we all sat in the garden and listened to my grandfather's stories. It was a warm and happy day with my loving relatives. I can't wait to visit them again soon!

A Write (T) for true and (F) for false:

- 1 The family traveled to Cairo. ()
- 2 My cousins and I played games and took photos. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 My grandparents were very (happy – tired – angry) to see us.
- 4 My uncle and aunt prepared a big (breakfast – lunch – dinner).
- 5 We listened to my (teacher's – aunt's – grandfather's) stories.

E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

"Your favorite celebration"

balloons – ribbons – cake – gifts

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My mother went to buy some fruits and vegetables.
a) sleeping b) cooking c) shopping d) reading
- 2 I put a fresh in my salad.
a) cucumber b) book c) station d) pencil
- 3 They collected money to help people.
a) tall b) poor c) rich d) happy
- 4 We stopped at the to buy some chips and juice.
a) snack station b) bus stop c) library d) hospital
- 5 I drank a cold juice after playing football.
a) plate of rice b) bottle of orange
c) pack of cookies d) slice of bread
- 6 My mother and I made food to share with poor families.
a) paintings b) stairs c) books d) packages
- 7 I put a piece of on my bread for breakfast.
a) water b) sugar c) cheese d) ice
- 8 We used fresh to make the salad tasty.
a) cookies b) paper c) glass d) lettuce
- 9 Omar smiled when he got a medal.
a) sadly b) slowly c) proudly d) angrily
- 10 I put my sandwich on a
a) cup b) plate c) spoon d) bag

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A bottle – kilo – sound – bread – cheese

Noura and her mother prepared food for the picnic. They packed a (1) of orange juice. They also brought a (2) of apples. Noura took some (3) to make sandwiches. She added a piece of (4) to each one. They were happy to eat together outdoors.

B crunchy – piece – counter – bunch – healthy

People can find many nice shops in their neighborhood. I went to one store and saw fresh fruit on the (1) I bought a (2) of bananas. I also bought some (3) cucumbers. I felt happy to buy (4) food.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I eat (a) apple every day.
- 2 There is (an) chair next to the door.
- 3 Sama has (an) oranges.
- 4 She ate (a) egg for breakfast.
- 5 There is (an) cat sleeping on the couch.
- 6 I would like (an) piece of cheese on my sandwich.
- 7 Is there (a) water in this bottle?
- 8 The grocer sold me a (bottle) of tomatoes for the salad.
- 9 Let's make (an) sandwiches.
- 10 Can I have (a) juice, please?

Super
Question ?

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 How many tomatoes did omar buy
.....
- 2 we had to climb the stairs
.....
- 3 maya bought a kilo of sugar
.....

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The students will a song at the school concert.
a) eat b) perform c) sleep d) draw
- 2 Last year, we Eid with family and friends.
a) celebrated b) ignored c) washed d) cleaned
- 3 We put the on the birthday cake.
a) flowers b) pencils c) candles d) chairs
- 4 I like to photos to remember the special days.
a) take b) cut c) write d) sleep
- 5 The girls wore colorful in their hair for the party.
a) dress b) gloves c) shoes d) ribbons
- 6 On birthdays, friends like to
a) exchange gifts b) eat dinner
c) sleep d) read books
- 7 My friend was good at playing chess, so she the game.
a) clapped b) won c) ate d) climbed
- 8 Ahmed felt very when he won the first prize.
a) proud b) sad c) tired d) sleepy

- 9 During festivals, people wear to celebrate.
 a) pajamas b) shoes c) special clothes d) hats
- 10 The children loudly when their team won the game.
 a) joined b) slept c) cheered d) washed

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A gathered – chicken – giveaways – celebration – enormous

Families often celebrate special occasions with food and fun. Children receive small (1) to enjoy. Last week, we celebrated Eid, and my grandmother cooked delicious grilled (2) for everyone. She also baked an (3) chocolate cake. Many guests arrived, and we all (4) in the garden to eat and talk.

B balloon – take photos – hide-and-seek – playground – chess

Children enjoy many fun activities. Some play (1) quietly in the classroom. Others like to play (2) outside with their friends. The children run and laugh in the (3) Many of them also (4) to remember their fun day.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The garden looks (color) in spring.
- 2 Everyone was (happiness) at the birthday party.
- 3 The elephant is very (small).
- 4 The new student is very (friend).
- 5 The library is very (quietly) in the morning.
- 6 The street is (wider) and clean.
- 7 It was a (rain) day yesterday.
- 8 My dad is always (busiest) on weekends.
- 9 My sister wore a (beauty) dress to the party.
- 10 Eslam is very (short) and can reach the top shelf easily.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 essam's birthday was a happy celebration

- 2 we watched the fireworks in the sky

- 3 how many flags are there

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I ate a small of cheese with my sandwich.
a) kilo b) carton c) bar d) piece
- 2 My mother bought a of apples from the market.
a) slice b) piece c) bar d) kilo
- 3 Ice cream is my favorite
a) picnic b) dessert c) healthy d) share
- 4 At the festival, people like to and make new friends.
a) run b) socialize c) sleep d) eat
- 5 We helped the teacher the classroom with balloons.
a) decorate b) clean c) read d) sweep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gifts – fireworks – guests – cheerful – celebration

Last weekend, we had an unforgettable holiday with our family. The (1) was full of fun and laughter. At night, we watched colorful (2) in the sky. Everyone was excited to exchange (3), and the children were very (4) throughout the day.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My dad drinks (an) cup of coffee.
- 2 He needs (a) umbrella because it's raining.
- 3 After the long trip, we felt (tire).
- 4 Khalid is (short), but his brother is short.
- 5 Please, give me a (bar) of cake.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should always our teachers for their efforts.
a) forget b) ignore c) appreciate d) break
- 2 The girl the gift before giving it to her friend.
a) cooked b) wrapped c) painted d) opened
- 3 On National Day, we the heroes of our country.
a) ignore b) honor c) forget d) miss
- 4 We had a nice in the park.
a) class b) shop c) homework d) picnic
- 5 Would you like a of bread with butter?
a) bottle b) bar c) kilo d) slice

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dessert – market – cooler – shopping – promised

Omar wanted to buy some vegetables, so he went to the (1) He (2) his mother to bring fresh tomatoes. He had to climb the stairs to reach the shop on the second floor. After (3), he put the tomatoes in the (4) to keep them fresh.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We saw (any) milk bottles on the table.
- 2 My mother bought a (kilo) apples.
- 3 I live in a (peace) village near the Nile.
- 4 My brother is very (kindly) to everyone.
- 5 The fireworks were very (brightness) last night.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

delivering – promised – enjoyed – busy

Sara: What did Kareem and Fatma do last weekend?

Lina: They were (1) food packages for the poor people.

Sara: Was the market quiet?

Lina: No, it was very (2) that morning.

Sara: Did Kareem and Fatma like helping the families?

Lina: Yes, they really (3) the day.

Sara: Will they help again next time?

Lina: Yes, they (4) to do it again.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The library is always (loud – quiet – noisy), and students like to read there.
- 2 At the festival, many colorful (meals – chairs – balloons) flew in the sky.
- 3 I need to buy (a – an – some) sugar.
- 4 The boy was (happily – happy – happiness) when he won the game.

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 The sky was full of color fireworks. (.....)
- 2 My friend always supports me. He is really help. (.....)
- 3 This is an nice car. (.....)
- 4 Would you like any water? (.....)



MODULE 3

Unit 5: Exploring Wonders in Egypt

Unit 6: The Lost Kite (Story)

Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- listen to short stories and dialogs about Egyptian places. - يستمع إلى قصص قصيرة ومحادثات عن أماكن مصرية.
- identify key details such as locations, activities, and landmarks. - يحدد التفاصيل الأساسية، مثل: المواقع، والأنشطة، والمعالم السياحية.
- understand advice using should/shouldn't in context. - يفهم النصائح التي تستخدم (should/shouldn't) في السياق.
- recognize oi/oy sounds in spoken words. - يتعرف على أصوات الحروف (oi/oy) في الكلمات المنطوقة.

Speaking:

- describe trips, holidays, and experiences using simple sentences. - يصف الرحلات، والإجازات، والتجارب باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- ask and answer questions about places, activities, and local life. - يسأل أسئلة ويجيب عنها حول: الأماكن، والأنشطة، والحياة المحلية.
- give advice using should/shouldn't in short dialogs. - يقدم النصائح باستخدام (should/shouldn't) في المحادثات القصيرة.
- pronounce oi/oy words correctly in speech. - ينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على (oi/oy) بشكل صحيح أثناء التحدث.

Reading:

- read short texts about places and identify the main idea. - يقرأ نصوصًا قصيرة عن الأماكن ويحدد الفكرة الرئيسية.
- recognize vocabulary related to trips, holidays, and sightseeing. - يتعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالرحلات، والإجازات، والمعالم السياحية.
- Identify should/shouldn't in written advice texts. - يحدد استخدام (should/shouldn't) في نصوص النصائح المكتوبة.
- understand the structure of postcards, including greeting, body, and closing. - يفهم تركيب البطاقة البريدية، بما في ذلك: التحية، والمحتوى، والخاتمة.

Writing:

- write short sentences or paragraphs about trips or holidays. - يكتب جملًا أو فقرات قصيرة عن الرحلات أو الإجازات.
- compose advice sentences using should/shouldn't. - يكتب جمل نصائح باستخدام (should/shouldn't).
- complete spelling activities with oi/oy words. - يكمل أنشطة الإملاء الخاصة بالكلمات التي تحتوي على (oi/oy).



Lesson 1

Land of History and Heritage



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



water springs
ينابيع ماء



journey
رحلة



bedouins
بدو



traditional life
حياة تقليدية



tents
خيم

Extra vocabulary

heritage	تراث	Oyoun Mousa	عيون موسى	Moses Springs	ينابيع موسى
South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	through	خلال
visitors	زائرون	quiet (adj)	هادئ	interesting (adj)	ممتع
history	تاريخ	local (adj)	محلي	natural wonder	عجيبه طبيعيه

Expressions and Phrases

long ago	منذ زمن بعيد	historical site	موقع تاريخي
----------	--------------	-----------------	-------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
call يدعى	called	walk يمشي	walked

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
drink يشرب	drank	come يأتي	came
take يأخذ	took	meet يقابل	met



Warm up

Did you visit a desert or a place with springs?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Oyoun Mousa, also called **Moses Springs**⁽¹⁾, is a beautiful place in **South Sinai**⁽²⁾, Egypt. It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees.

Long ago, Moses and the people drank water from these springs during their **journey**⁽³⁾ through the desert. Today, many **visitors**⁽⁴⁾ come to enjoy the

clean water and the quiet desert around it. You can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about the interesting history of the place.

Some visitors also meet local **bedouins**⁽⁵⁾, see their tents, and learn about their **traditional life**⁽⁶⁾. Oyoun Mousa is not only a **natural wonder**⁽⁷⁾ but also an important **historical site**⁽⁸⁾ for everyone.



- | | |
|-----|--------------|
| (1) | ينابيع موسى |
| (2) | جنوب سيناء |
| (3) | رحلة |
| (4) | زائرون |
| (5) | بدو |
| (6) | حياة تقليدية |
| (7) | عجبة طبيعية |
| (8) | موقع تاريخي |

✓ Checkpoint Read again and answer: SB

① Where is Oyoun Mousa?

.....

② What did Moses and his people do at Oyoun Mousa long ago?

.....

عيون موسى، المعروفة أيضاً باسم ينابيع موسى، هي مكان خلّاب في جنوب سيناء، مصر. توجد بها عيون مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة. في قديم الزمان، شرب موسى وقومه من هذه الينابيع خلال رحلتهم عبر الصحراء. واليوم، يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بمياهها النقية وهدوء الصحراء المحيطة بها. يمكنك التقاط الصور، والتجول بالقرب من الينابيع، والتعرف على تاريخ المكان المثير للاهتمام. كما يقابل بعض الزوار البدو المحليين، ويشاهدون خيامهم، ويتعرفون على حياتهم التقليدية. عيون موسى ليست مجرد عجبة طبيعية، بل هي أيضاً موقع تاريخي مهم للجميع.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Oyoum Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt.
عيون موسى مكان جميل يقع في جنوب سيناء، مصر.
- ✓ It has fresh water springs and tall palm trees.
تحتوي على ينابيع مياه عذبة وأشجار نخيل طويلة.
- ✓ Long ago, Moses and his people drank from these springs during their desert journey.
منذ زمن بعيد، شرب موسى وقومه من هذه الينابيع أثناء رحلتهم في الصحراء.
- ✓ Today, many visitors come to enjoy the clean water and the quiet desert.
اليوم، يأتي العديد من الزوار للاستمتاع بالمياه النظيفة وهدوء الصحراء.
- ✓ Visitors can take photos, walk near the springs, and learn about the history of the place.
يمكن للزائرين التقاط الصور، والمشي بالقرب من الينابيع، والتعرف على تاريخ المكان.
- ✓ Some visitors meet local bedouins, see their tents, and learn about their traditional life.
بعض الزائرين يلتقون بالبدو المحليين، ويرون خيامهم، ويتعرفون على حياتهم التقليدية.
- ✓ Oyoum Mousa is an important historical site for everyone.
عيون موسى هي موقع تاريخي مهم للجميع.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Oyoum Mousa is also (**drank** – met – called – walked) Moses Springs.
- 2 Mosès Springs is a beautiful place in (**West** – North – East – South) Sinai.
- 3 You can (**learn** – meet – take – enjoy) photos, and walk near the springs.
- 4 Oyoum Mousa is a/an (**unnatural** – natural – dangerous – bad) wonder.
- 5 Some visitors meet local (**vets** – teachers – doctors – bedouins) in Oyoum Mousa.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Oyoun Mousa is in South Sinai. (.....)
- 2 Oyoun Mousa has fresh sea water. (.....)
- 3 Visitors can take photos near the springs. (.....)
- 4 Oyoun Mousa is a natural wonder. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Many people visit to see the beautiful springs.
a) Cairo b) Suez c) Oyoun Mousa d) Alexandria
- 2 The bedouins live in and follow a traditional life.
a) ships b) cars c) huts d) tents
- 3 People in the desert used to live a life.
a) modern b) city c) traditional d) busy
- 4 Oyoun Mousa has fresh where visitors can drink and enjoy.
a) life b) water springs c) mountain d) tent
- 5 The travel on camels across the hot desert.
a) farmers b) fishermen c) bedouins d) pilots
- 6 The trees give us dates.
a) mango b) orange c) apple d) palm
- 7 The mountain is a natural of our world.
a) toy b) wonder c) game d) house
- 8 A is a trip from one place to another.
a) journey b) story c) song d) toy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trees – water – near – quiet – natural

Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in the desert of South Sinai. It has clean
(1) that comes from (2) springs. People can take photos, walk
(3) the springs, and enjoy the (4) desert. It's a wonderful place
to visit and relax.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Spending a day with the bedouins is a special experience. In the morning, they prepare tea on a small fire and eat simple food like bread and dates. You can see their camels and sheep and learn about how they live in the desert. The bedouins are very kind and enjoy sharing stories about their traditional life. You can sit in their tents, drink tea, and watch the sunset over the quiet desert. It is a peaceful and beautiful way to learn about their life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 - a) life in the city
 - b) a day with the bedouins
 - c) visiting the pyramids
 - d) animals in the desert
- 2 The underlined word "special" means
 - a) bad
 - b) quiet
 - c) nice
 - d) hot

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the bedouins eat for breakfast?
.....
- 4 What animals do the bedouins take care of?
.....
- 5 How can you learn about the bedouins life?
.....

Super
Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 What can you see in oyoun Mousa
.....
- 2 the bedouins travel across the hot desert
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"A day in the desert"

bedouins – traditional life – tents



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 2

Adventures in South Sinai



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



snorkeling
الغطس



scuba diving
الغوص باستخدام أجهزة التنفس



starfish
نجمة البحر



horseback riding
ركوب الخيل



hiking
جولة على الأقدام



corals
شعاب مرجانية

Extra vocabulary

adventures	مغامرات	wonderful (adj)	رائع	vacation	عطلة/إجازة
Dahab	مدينة دهب	mid-year	منتصف العام	one day	يومًا ما
living sea animals	حيوانات بحرية حية	mountains	جبال	beach	شاطئ

Expressions and Phrases

That sounds fun!	يبدو ذلك ممتعًا!	You're right!	أنت محق!
That sounds amazing!	يبدو ذلك رائعًا!	You definitely should!	بالتأكيد يجب أن تفعل ذلك!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
try	يُجرب	tried	يلمس
		touch	touched

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
spend	يُقضى	spent	يذهب
		go	went

A Wonderful Vacation in Dahab عطلة رائعة في دهب



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Karima

Hi Salma! How was your mid-year vacation?

مرحباً سلمى! كيف كانت عطلة نصف العام الخاصة بك؟

It was wonderful! I spent my holiday in Dahab with my family.

كانت رائعة! قضيت عطلة في دهب مع عائلتي.



Salma



Karima

Wow! What did you do there?

رائع! ماذا فعلتم هناك؟



We went scuba diving and saw many starfish. You should really try it one day!

ذهبنا للغوص باستخدام أجهزة التنفس تحت الماء ورأينا العديد من نجوم البحر. يجب أن تجربيه يوماً ما!



Salma



Karima

That sounds fun! Did you go snorkeling too?

يبدو ذلك ممتعاً! هل قمتم بالغوص أيضاً؟

Yes, and I saw corals. You shouldn't touch them. Because they are living sea animals.

نعم، ورأيت الشعاب المرجانية. لا يجب أن تلمسها، لأنها حيوانات بحرية حية.



Salma



Karima

You're right! What else did you do?

أنت محقة! ماذا فعلتم أيضاً؟

We went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.

ذهبنا للتنزه في الجبال وركوب الخيل على الشاطئ.



Salma



Karima

That sounds amazing! I should visit Dahab next vacation!

يبدو ذلك رائعًا! يجب أن أزور دهب في العطلة القادمة!

You definitely should!

يجب عليك بالتأكيد فعل ذلك!



Salma

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Salma spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab with her family, and it was wonderful.
قضت سلمى إجازة نصف العام الخاصة بها في دهب مع عائلتها، وكانت رائعة.
- ✓ They went scuba diving and saw many starfish.
ذهبوا للغوص باستخدام أجهزة التنفس تحت الماء، ورأوا العديد من نجوم البحر.
- ✓ Salma tells her friend that she should try scuba diving one day.
أخبرت سلمى صديقتها أنه يجب عليها تجربة الغوص يومًا ما.
- ✓ Salma also went snorkeling and saw corals.
ذهبت سلمى أيضًا للغوص السطحي، ورأت الشعاب المرجانية.
- ✓ Salma tells her friend that she shouldn't touch the corals.
أخبرت سلمى صديقتها أنه لا ينبغي لمس الشعاب المرجانية.
- ✓ The corals are living sea animals.
الشعاب المرجانية هي حيوانات بحرية حية.
- ✓ Salma and her family went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.
ذهبت سلمى وعائلتها للتنزه في الجبال وركوب الخيل على الشاطئ.
- ✓ Karima wants to visit Dahab on her next vacation.
كريمة تريد زيارة دهب في عطلتها القادمة.

✓ Checkpoint Read again and answer:



- 1 What did Salma see while she was scuba diving?
- 2 Why did Salma say people shouldn't touch corals?
- 3 What activities did Salma do on land?

Language in Use

Should and Shouldn't

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use "should/ shouldn't" for giving advice.

نستخدم "shouldn't/should" لإعطاء النصائح.

To give an advice

لإعطاء نصيحة

Affirmative Form

نصيحة مثبتة

تكملة الجملة + (الفعل في المصدر) + **should** + inf. (الفاعل).

e.g. You **should try** scuba diving.

يجب أن تجرب الغوص باستخدام أجهزة التنفس تحت الماء.

Negative Form

نصيحة منفية

تكملة الجملة + (الفعل في المصدر) + **shouldn't** + inf. (الفاعل).

e.g. You **shouldn't touch** the starfish.

لا ينبغي أن تلمس نجمة البحر.



Got it:

You should (**eating**) healthy food.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**eat**) لأن بعد (**should**) يكون الفعل في المصدر (**inf**).

Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بـ(هل):

Should + subject (الفاعل) + (**inf**) المصدر في الفعل؟

Yes, + subject (الفاعل) + **should**.

OR

B: No, + subject (الفاعل) + **shouldn't**.

e.g. A: **Should** I take pictures of the corals?

هل ينبغي أن ألتقط صوراً للشعاب المرجانية؟

B: Yes, you **should**.

نعم، يجب عليك ذلك.

e.g. B: No, you **shouldn't**.

لا، لا يجب عليك ذلك.



Got it:

Should I (**visiting**) Dahab?

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**visit**) لأن بعد (**should**) يكون الفعل في المصدر (**inf**).

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① It's sunny. We (**shouldn't** – **should** – **are** – **is**) bring water and a cap.
- ② Should I (**coming** – **comes** – **came** – **come**) early to school?
- ③ It's cold near the river, so we should (**wears** – **wearing** – **wore** – **wear**) jackets.

Quick Practice on Should and Shouldn't

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 It's cold. You wear a scarf.
a) should b) are c) do d) shouldn't
- 2 A: we go outside if it's rainy? B: No, we shouldn't.
a) Are b) Should c) Is d) Are
- 3 If you go hiking in the mountains, you wear comfortable shoes.
a) should b) shouldn't c) are d) is
- 4 You eat too many sweets.
a) are b) is c) should d) shouldn't
- 5 It's sunny. You should sunglasses.
a) wearing b) wore c) wears d) wear

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (should) be late for work.
- 2 It's snowing. You should (wears) a jacket.
- 3 It's rainy. You (should) play outside.
- 4 She (should) touch the starfish.
- 5 A: (Are) I drink water on a hot day? B: Yes, you should.
- 6 I am tired. I (shouldn't) sleep early.
- 7 A: (Are) I swim when the weather is cold and windy?
B: No, you shouldn't.
- 8 You should (went) scuba diving.
- 9 We (shouldn't) listen to our teachers carefully.
- 10 It's hot. You (should) wear a heavy jacket.
- 11 You (shouldn't) read interesting books.
- 12 Should she (takes) pictures of the mountains?
- 13 You (should) eat junk food.
- 14 The sun is very strong, you should (wears) sunscreen.
- 15 It's cloudy. My father (should) drive his car fast.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ahmed loves traveling and having new every year.
a) adventures b) lessons c) classes d) parties
- 2 Omar go to school.
a) is b) should c) do d) shouldn't
- 3 Many tourists go in Dahab to see colorful fish.
a) camping b) dancing c) shopping d) scuba diving
- 4 The looks like a star in the water.
a) starfish b) octopus c) whale d) fish
- 5 is a fun activity where you ride a horse.
a) Horseback riding b) Jumping
c) Snorkeling d) Skating
- 6 Sama should hard for her exams.
a) study b) studies c) studying d) studied
- 7 The sea in Dahab has beautiful
a) flowers b) corals c) trees d) rocks
- 8 We enjoyed our mid-year at the beach.
a) vacation b) school day c) homework d) test

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

snorkeling – adventure – corals – river – colorful

Dahab is a beautiful town by the Red Sea. Many people visit it to see (1)..... sea animals. They enjoy (2)..... in the sea to see the fish and (3)..... under the clear blue water. It is a great place for fun and (4).....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

During the mid-year vacation, Hamza and Farida had a lot of fun. They enjoyed many outdoor and indoor activities. Hamza liked playing football and riding his bike in the park. Farida enjoyed walking by the sea and taking photos of nature. At home, they watched movies, played board games, and helped their parents cook. Sometimes they listened to music or read storybooks. Their mid-year vacation was full of happiness, fun, and special moments together.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hamza liked playing in the park.
 a) football b) tennis c) chess d) cards
- 2 Farida enjoyed walking by the
 a) forest b) sea c) mountain d) road

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What indoor activities did they do at home?

- 4 Who helped their parents cook?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You (shouldn't) drink water on a hot day.
- 2 Farida (should) forget her homework.
- 3 A: Should you shout during lessons? B: (Yes), I shouldn't.
- 4 Should Omar (brings) his sports shoes for PE?
- 5 A: Should I take my notebook to school? B: Yes, you (shouldn't).
- 6 Should students (did) their homework every day?
- 7 Should Sara (wears) a coat today?
- 8 You (shouldn't) be kind to your friends.
- 9 We (should) play outside when it is stormy.
- 10 A: Should you run on wet floors? B: No, I (should).

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 should I wear a jacket tonight
- 2 I spent my holiday in dahab

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Adventures in Dahab"

snorkeling – hiking – horseback riding





Lesson 3

A Day Between Two Ports

Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Port Said	بورسعيد	Port Fouad	بورفؤاد	trip	رحلة قصيرة
the Corniche	الكورنيش	Suez Canal	قناة السويس	seagulls	طيور النورس
breeze	نسيم	view	منظر	memorable (adj)	لا ينسى

Extra vocabulary

ships	سفن	sailing	الإبحار	cheerful (adj)	مبهج
noise	ضوضاء	ferry	عَبَّارة / مَعْدِيَّة	ride	جولة
exciting (adj)	مثير	quiet (adj)	هادئ	cool (adj)	لطيف
tasty (adj)	لذيذ	seafood	مأكولات بحرية	joyful (adj)	مرح

Expressions and Phrases

after that	بعد ذلك	by the shore	بجانب الشاطئ	across the canal	عبر القناة
------------	---------	--------------	--------------	------------------	------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
start	started	laugh	laughed
Present	Past	Present	Past
begin	began	fly	flew

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

A Fun Day in Port Said and Port Fouad

يوم ممتع فى بورسعيد وبورفؤاد



Warm up

Did you visit a place by the sea?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last weekend, my family and I **started**⁽¹⁾ our trip to Port Said early in the morning. When we arrived, we walked along **the Corniche**⁽²⁾ and watched **ships**⁽³⁾ **sailing**⁽⁴⁾ near the point where the Suez Canal begins. The boys were laughing and taking pictures while **seagulls**⁽⁵⁾ flew above them, making **cheerful**⁽⁶⁾ noise. After that, we took the ferry across the canal to Port Fouad.



The ride⁽⁷⁾ was short but very exciting. In Port Fouad, we enjoyed the **quiet**⁽⁸⁾ streets, the cool **breeze**⁽⁹⁾, and the beautiful sea view. Before going home, we ate **tasty**⁽¹⁰⁾ seafood by the shore. It was a **joyful**⁽¹¹⁾ and **memorable**⁽¹²⁾ trip.

- | | |
|------|-------------|
| (1) | بدأ |
| (2) | الكورنيش |
| (3) | السفن |
| (4) | الإبحار |
| (5) | طيور النورس |
| (6) | مبهج |
| (7) | الجولة |
| (8) | هادئ |
| (9) | نسمة |
| (10) | لذيذ |
| (11) | مرح |
| (12) | لا ينسى |

فى نهاية الأسبوع الماضى، بدأت أنا وعائلتى رحلتنا إلى بورسعيد فى الصباح الباكر. عند وصولنا، تجولنا على طول الكورنيش وشاهدنا السفن تبحر قرب نقطة بداية قناة السويس. كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون الصور بينما تحلق طيور النورس فوقهم، مُصدرةً ضجيجاً مُبهجاً. بعد ذلك، استقللنا العبّارة عبر القناة إلى بور فؤاد. كانت الرحلة قصيرة ولكنها مثيرة للغاية. فى بور فؤاد، استمتعنا بالشوارع الهادئة، والنسيم اللطيف، وإطلالة البحر الخلابة. قبل العودة إلى المنزل، تناولنا مأكولات بحرية لذيذة على الشاطئ. كانت رحلة ممتعة لا تُنسى.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The family started their trip to Port Said early in the morning.

بدأت العائلة رحلتها إلى بورسعيد في وقتٍ مبكر من الصباح.

- ✓ They walked along the Corniche and watched ships near the Suez Canal.

تجولوا على طول الكورنيش وشاهدوا السفن بالقرب من قناة السويس.

- ✓ The boys laughed and took pictures while seagulls flew above.

كان الأولاد يضحكون ويلتقطون الصور بينما كانت طيور النورس تحلق فوقهم.

- ✓ They took a short and exciting ferry ride across the canal to Port Fouad.

قاموا برحلة قصيرة ومثيرة عبر القناة إلى بور فؤاد.

- ✓ In Port Fouad, they enjoyed the quiet streets, cool breeze, and sea view.

في بور فؤاد، استمتعوا بالشوارع الهادئة والنسيم اللطيف ومنظر البحر الجميل.

- ✓ Before returning home, they ate tasty seafood and felt the trip was joyful and memorable.

قبل العودة إلى المنزل، تناولوا المأكولات البحرية اللذيذة، وشعروا أن الرحلة كانت مبهجة ولا تُنسى.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read again and answer: SB

- ① What did they see when they walked along the Corniche?
- ② How did the family cross the canal to Port Fouad?
- ③ What did the family enjoy in Port Fouad?

2. Write (T) true or (F) false: SB

- ① The family started their trip to Port Said in the evening. (.....)
- ② They watched ships sailing near the beginning of the Suez Canal. (.....)
- ③ The boys were quiet and didn't take any pictures. (.....)
- ④ They crossed the canal to Port Fouad by a ferry. (.....)
- ⑤ The family ate seafood before going home. (.....)

Pronunciation

Words with "oi" and "oy" Sounds



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

We use "oi" usually in the middle of a word.

نستخدم "oi" عادةً في وسط الكلمة.

oi

coin	عملة معدنية	boil	يغلي	soil	تربة	point	يشير
noise	ضوضاء	join	يلتحق	oil	زيت		

We use "oy" usually at the end of a word.

نستخدم "oy" عادةً في نهاية الكلمة.

oy

boy	ولد	toy	لعبة	enjoy	يستمتع	joy	فرح
-----	-----	-----	------	-------	--------	-----	-----



Tip!

Rhyming Words

They are words that sound the same at the end.

الكلمات المتناغمة هي الكلمات التي تنطق بنفس الطريقة في النهاية.

Example:

- cat → hat
- star → car

- play → day
- moon → spoon

✓ Checkpoint Sort the words: SB

boy – soil – join – toy – enjoy – coin – point

oi

oy



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We like walking along the to enjoy the beautiful view.
a) school b) mall c) cinema d) Corniche
- 2 The children watched boats across the water.
a) climbing b) jumping c) swimming d) sailing
- 3 A lot of ships pass through the every day.
a) bridge b) Sinai Mountain c) desert d) Suez Canal
- 4 We saw many flying over the sea.
a) lions b) starfish c) coral d) seagulls
- 5 We crossed from Port Said to Port Fouad by
a) train b) bus c) car d) ferry
- 6 I liked the across the canal.
a) wall b) chair c) school d) ride

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A started – breeze – walked – memorable – seafood

The beach is always a great place to visit. Last weekend, we had a (1)..... trip there. We (2)..... along the Corniche. We felt the cool (3)..... on our faces. For lunch, we ate delicious (4)..... at a small restaurant by the shore.

B Port Said – sailing – pictures – exciting – arrived

My name is Yara. Last Friday, I started an (1)..... trip. I went to (2)..... with my family. We saw ships (3)..... near the point where the Suez Canal begins. The boys were laughing and taking (4)..... while seagulls flew above.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last month, my family went to Port Said. We walked in the city and saw many colorful buildings. Children were playing near the water, and boats moved slowly. We enjoyed the cool breeze and watched the sunset. Later, we ate fresh fish and some local food. Everyone laughed and had fun. It was a happy day, and we will always remember this trip.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) a trip to Port Said b) cooking at home
 c) learning math d) watching TV
- 2 The underlined word "breeze" means
 a) light wind b) hot weather c) a rainy day d) a storm

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did they go on the trip?

.....

- 4 What did they eat?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 seagulls flew high above the cornice.

.....

- 2 delicious seafood was served by the shore

.....

- 3 did we take a ferry ride

.....

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Port Said"

trip – taking photos – ferry



.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Discover The Magic of Egypt

Writing



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

magic	سحر	the Blue Hole	الثقب الأزرق
clear (adj)	صافي	around	حول
colorful fish	أسماك ملونة	moment	لحظة

Extra vocabulary

beautiful (adj)	جميل	pools	حمامات سباحة
look amazing	يبدو رائعًا	peaceful (adj)	سلمي/هادئ
adventure	مغامرة		

Expressions and Phrases

perfect for	ممتاز لـ	full of	ملء بـ
Wish you were here!	تمنيت لو كنت هنا!		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

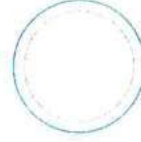
Present	Past	Present	Past
spot يلاحظ	spotted	wish يتمنى	wished
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
has/have لديه	had	see يرى	saw



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hello from Dahab!
I had a wonderful time at
the Blue Hole⁽¹⁾. The water
is very clear⁽²⁾ and perfect⁽³⁾
for snorkeling. I saw many
colorful fish⁽⁴⁾ and beautiful
corals. The mountains
around the pools⁽⁵⁾ make the
place look amazing⁽⁶⁾. I even
spotted⁽⁷⁾ a big starfish! You
should visit the "Blue Hole"
because it is fun, peaceful⁽⁸⁾,
and full of adventure.
I enjoyed every moment⁽⁹⁾
here!
Wish⁽¹⁰⁾ you were here!
Your friend,
Hany



Full Name: Mostafa Ahmed

Country: Cairo, Egypt

- (1) الثقب الأزرق
(2) صافي
(3) ممتاز
(4) أسماك ملونة
(5) حمامات السباحة
(6) يبدو رائعًا
(7) لاحظ
(8) هادئ
(9) لحظة
(10) يتمنى



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Hany had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole in Dahab.

استمتع هاني بوقته كثيرًا في الثقب الأزرق في دهب.

- The water is very clear and perfect for snorkeling.

الماء صافي جدًا ومثالي للغوص السطحي.

- Hany saw many colorful fish, beautiful corals, and even a big starfish.

هاني رأى العديد من الأسماك الملونة، والشعاب المرجانية الجميلة، وحتى نجمة بحر كبيرة.

- The mountains make the place look amazing.

الجبال تجعل المكان يبدو مذهلاً.

- Hany tells his friend that he should visit the Blue Hole.

يخبر هاني صديقه بأنه يجب عليه زيارة الثقب الأزرق.

- The Blue Hole is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure.

الثقب الأزرق ممتع، هادئ، ومليء بالمغامرة.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Ahmed went to Dahab with his friends. (.....)
- 2 Ahmed didn't enjoy his time at the Blue Hole. (.....)
- 3 They saw many colorful fish. (.....)
- 4 The mountains around the pool make the place look amazing. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The water is very clear and perfect for
a) sleeping b) shopping c) hiking d) snorkeling
- 2 We went hiking in the last weekend.
a) park b) sea c) city d) mountains
- 3 We swam in the hotel
a) street b) market c) mountain d) pool
- 4 We many colorful fish while snorkeling.
a) bought b) drove c) ate d) spotted
- 5 The beach was and calm.
a) peaceful b) bad c) dirty d) dangerous
- 6 We remembered every of our vacation.
a) note b) pen c) pool d) moment

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

played – spotted – corals – clear – look

Hello from Dahab! I had a great time at the Blue Hole. The water is (1)..... and perfect for snorkeling. I saw many colorful fish and beautiful (2)..... The mountains around the pools (3)..... amazing. I even (4)..... a big starfish! The place is fun, peaceful, and full of adventure. I enjoyed every moment here!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Saturday, I spent a wonderful day with my friends at the park. In the morning, we played football and rode our bicycles around the paths. Later, we sat under a big tree and ate sandwiches, fruit, and cookies. We talked, laughed, and enjoyed the warm sunshine. In the afternoon, we fed the ducks at the small lake and took many photos. Before leaving, we played hide-and-seek and ran around the grass. It was a happy, peaceful, and fun day. I hope we can do it again soon!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "paths" means that we can ride or walk on.
a) trees b) roads c) lakes d) mountains
- 2 We took at the lake.
a) pencils b) chairs c) books d) photos

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they eat under the tree?

.....

- 4 What did they do in the afternoon?

.....

- 5 How was the day?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 what did asmaa see in the water?

.....

- 2 i had a wonderful time

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Blue Hole"

Dahab – clear – snorkeling



.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

water springs	ينابيع ماء	journey	رحلة
bedouins	بدو	traditional life	حياة تقليدية
tents	خيم	heritage	تراث
Oyoun Mousa	عيون موسى	Moses Springs	ينابيع موسى
South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
long ago	منذ زمن بعيد	during	أثناء

Lesson (2)

snorkeling	الغطس	scuba diving	الغوص باستخدام أجهزة التنفس
starfish	نجمة البحر	horseback riding	ركوب الخيل
hiking	جولة على الأقدام	corals	شعاب مرجانية
adventures	مغامرات	wonderful	رائع
vacation	عطلة/إجازة	Dahab	دهب
mid-year	منتصف العام	living sea animals	حيوانات بحرية حية

Lesson (3)

Port Said	بورسعيد	Port Fouad	بورفؤاد
trip	رحلة قصيرة	the Corniche	الكورنيش
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	seagulls	طيور النورس
breeze	نسيم	view	منظر
memorable	لا ينسى	ships	سفن
sailing	الإبحار	cheerful	مبهج

Lessons (4 and 5)

magic	سحر	the Blue Hole	الثقب الأزرق
clear	صافي	perfect for	ممتاز لـ
colorful fish	أسماك ملونة	moment	لحظة
beautiful	جميل	pools	حمامات سباحة
look amazing	يبدو رائعًا	peaceful	سلمي/هادئ

Language in Use

Should and Shouldn't

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

تكملة الجملة + (الفعل في المصدر) + **should** + inf (الفاعل)

e.g. You **should** try scuba diving.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

تكملة الجملة + (الفعل في المصدر) + **shouldn't** + inf (الفاعل)

e.g. You **shouldn't** go snorkeling now because the sea is rough.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

A: **Should** + subject (الفاعل) + inf (الفعل في المصدر) + تكملة الجملة.

B: Yes, subject (الفاعل) + **should**. OR B: No, + subject (الفاعل) + **shouldn't**.

e.g. A: **Should** we go hiking in the mountains?

B: Yes, we **should**. OR B: No, we **shouldn't**.

Unit 5

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
رحلة	water springs
بدو	traditional life
تراث	tents
تحت	desert
خلال	natural

Lesson 2

الفقوس باستخدام أجهزة التنفس	snorkeling
ركوب الخيل	starfish
شعاب مرجانية	hiking
رائع	adventures

Lesson 3

رحلة قصيرة	Port Said
منظر	the Corniche
نسيم	seagulls
لا ينسى	view
الإبحار	cheerful noise

Lessons 4 and 5

سحر	the Blue Hole
أسماك ملونة	pools
جميل	peaceful

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

.....

drink

.....

.....

Past

called

.....

spent

started

Present

.....

come

.....

fly

Past

walked

.....

touched

.....



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to Write About "A Trip to Dahab":

- o Last summer, I went to + اكتب اسم المكان.
- o We went by + اكتب وسيلة المواصلات.
- o I saw + اذكر ماذا رأيت.
- o I felt + صف شعورك في الرحلة.

"A trip to Dahab"

Last summer, I went to Dahab with my family. We went by car. I saw the beautiful sea. I went swimming. I felt happy and excited. It was a wonderful trip, and I hope to go to Dahab again.

How to Write About "A Day in the Desert"

- o Last weekend, + اكتب إلى أين ذهبت.
- o I went with + اكتب مع من ذهبت.
- o I saw + صف ماذا رأيت ومن قابلت.
- o They wear + ماذا يرتدون.
- o It was an amazing day. + اكتب جملة ختامية تصف شعورك.

"A day in the desert"

Last weekend, I went to the desert with my family. I saw bedouins, their tents, and some camels. The bedouins live a traditional life. They wear long clothes. It was an amazing day.

1 Read and complete with the words in the box:

bedouins – traditional life – water springs – tents

- 1 Many animals need clean to drink every day.
- 2 The desert people are called
- 3 The tourists slept in small under the stars.
- 4 People in the village follow a that has been passed down for generations.

2 Put the following words in sentences:

- 1 bedouins:
- 2 journey:
- 3 water springs:
- 4 tents:
- 5 natural wonder:

3 Rearrange the words to make a sentence:

- 1 trip / and / was / It / joyful / memorable / a.
.....
- 2 across / the / took / canal / the / We / ferry.
.....
- 3 short / but / was / ride / very / The / exciting.
.....
- 4 walked / the / Corniche / We / along.
.....

4 Circle the odd one out:

- 1 joy - coin - toy - cat
- 2 boil - soil - join - man
- 3 royal - boy - noise - pen



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Salma spent her vacation in Dahab. (.....)
- 2 Salma went scuba diving and saw starfish. (.....)
- 3 Salma didn't go hiking in the mountains. (.....)
- 4 Salma rode camels by the beach. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 We drank fresh water from the
a) desert b) water springs c) oceans d) sea
- 2 Our visit to the mountains was a trip that I will never forget.
a) short b) quick c) difficult d) memorable
- 3 The weather was perfect and the cool felt great.
a) breeze b) storm c) noise d) bedouin
- 4 We eat too much sugar.
a) should b) shouldn't c) aren't d) doesn't
- 5 You clean your room.
a) not b) should c) shouldn't d) aren't
- 6 Should I that sandwich, or do you want it?
a) eat b) ate c) eating d) eats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

seagulls – Port Said – home – ferry – Corniche

We love visiting places near the sea. We went to (1) last weekend. We took a (2) to cross the canal. Then we walked along the (3) and enjoyed the fresh air. We also saw (4) flying above us. It was a wonderful day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Omar went to the park on a sunny morning. The sky was clear, and the wind blew lightly. He saw children riding bikes and flying kites. Some people were having a picnic on the grass or walking their dogs. Omar enjoyed playing football with his friends and watching the ducks in the pond. He also painted a picture under a tree. The park was full of fun and excitement. Omar felt happy and relaxed, and he wanted to come back again soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The wind blew lightly. This means the wind wasn't
a) sleepy b) strong c) easy d) light
- 2 Children were in the park.
a) riding bikes b) sleeping c) cooking d) studying

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Omar enjoy doing with his friends?
- 4 How did Omar feel at the park?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We should (ate) fruits and vegetables.
- 2 A: Should I take my bag to school? B: Yes, you (shouldn't).
- 3 Should Sara (wears) a hat on a sunny day?
- 4 Should students (did) their homework every evening?

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 My family and i started our trip to port Said.
- 2 should i study english now?

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Fun outdoor activities"

wonderful – hiking – horseback riding





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 My family and I went to Port Said last year. (.....)
- 2 We watched the ships near the hospital. (.....)
- 3 We took the ferry to Port Fouad. (.....)
- 4 We didn't enjoy the busy streets and the cool breeze. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 Our to the desert took many hours.
a) game b) journey c) lesson d) lunch
- 2 The live in the desert and move from place to place.
a) farmers b) teachers c) bedouins d) sailors
- 3 I really enjoyed learning about the life of the local people.
a) traditional b) underwater c) strong d) deep
- 4 I eat too much cake.
a) should b) did c) shouldn't d) don't
- 5 I should my dad for help.
a) ask b) asking c) asking d) asked
- 6 You should to visit Wadi El Rayyan when you can.
a) try b) tried c) trying d) tries

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hiking – snorkeling – sailing – horse riding – playing

Last weekend, we had an exciting trip full of fun activities. We tried (1)..... along the beach and enjoyed the beautiful view. Then we went (2)..... on the sea and felt the cool wind. After that, we went (3)..... in the mountains and saw amazing nature. The best part was when we went (4)..... and saw colorful fish and corals underwater. It was an unforgettable day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Traditional life in the desert is peaceful and simple. People there often live in tents and move from place to place to find water and food. They are called bedouins, and they take care of camels, goats, and sheep. They drink from water springs and cook traditional food over a fire. Life in the desert can be hard, but the bedouins enjoy their traditions and live close to nature. Their strong family bonds and simple lifestyle make their life special.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 - a) traditional life in the desert
 - b) life in the big city
 - c) traveling by train
 - d) living near the sea
- 2 The underlined word "lifestyle" means the way someone
 - a) eats
 - b) lives
 - c) sleeps
 - d) dresses

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do bedouins take care of?
- 4 Why do bedouins move from place to place?
- 5 What makes bedouin life special?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Should she (ran) in the classroom?
- 2 Should Hamza (brings) a coat in winter?
- 3 You (shouldn't) drink milk every morning.
- 4 We (should) shout in the library.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 where do bedouins live
- 2 I traveled to Port said on friday.

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"My mid-year vacation"

spent – scuba diving – starfish



A) Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 My family and I went to (Cairo – Port Said – Alexandria) last month.
- 2 We walked along the (street – market – Corniche) and watched the ships.
- 3 We ate tasty (seafood – pizza – ice cream) before going home.

B) Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

starfish – snorkeling – Dahab – hiking

Karima : Hi Salma! How was your vacation?

Salma : It was wonderful! I went to (1)..... with my family.

Karima : Nice! What did you do there?

Salma : I went scuba diving and saw a big (2)..... I also saw corals while (3).....

Karima : Wow! Anything else?

Salma : Yes, we went (4)..... and horseback riding.

Karima : That sounds wonderful!

C) Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Should we (say – says – said) sorry when we make a mistake?
- 2 Oyouun Mousa has fresh water (river – pond – springs).
- 3 We sat by the sea and felt a cool (heat – fire – breeze) on our faces.
- 4 Ali (is – should – shouldn't) wear a helmet when riding a bike.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 You should touch a hot pan.
- 2 Students should listens carefully to the teacher.
- 3 You shouldn't sleep early.
- 4 You shouldn't touched the starfish.

D) Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last weekend, my family and I had a special day together. We went to the park in the morning and played football. Then we had a picnic under the trees and enjoyed tasty sandwiches and juice. After that, we rode our bikes and took many photos. In the evening, we went home and watched a movie together. It was a fun and happy day, and I hope we can do it again soon.

A Write (T) for true and (F) for false:

- 1 The family went to the park in the evening. (.....)
- 2 They ate sandwiches and juice during their picnic. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 They had a picnic under the (trees – chairs – cars).
- 4 After the picnic, they rode their (bikes – horses – buses).
- 5 In the evening, they watched a (football match – cartoon show – movie) at home.

E) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

“A Traditional Day”

South Sinai – bedouins – tents – learn

- 1 (.....)
- 2 (.....)
- 3 (.....)
- 4 (.....)

Story



The Lost Kite



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

- retell a story using key words.
- describe characters' feelings and actions.
- discuss the problem, solution, and moral with others.

- يعيد سرد قصة باستخدام الكلمات المفتاحية.
- يصف مشاعر وأفعال الشخصيات.
- يناقش المشكلة، والحل، والدرس الأخلاقي مع الآخرين.

Listening:

- answer questions about characters, events, and feelings.
- retell parts of the story after listening.
- follow simple directions mentioned in the story.

- يجيب عن أسئلة حول: الشخصيات، والأحداث، والمشاعر.
- يعيد سرد أجزاء من القصة بعد الاستماع إليها.
- يتبع التوجيهات البسيطة المذكورة في القصة.

Reading:

- identify characters, setting, and main events.
- recognize the problem and solution.
- understand the story's moral or lesson.

- يحدد الشخصيات، والإطار الزمني/المكاني (البيئة)، والأحداث الرئيسية.
- يتعرف على المشكلة والحل.
- يفهم الدرس أو العبرة الأخلاقية للقصة.

Writing:

- write short sentences or paragraphs about characters, setting, or events.

- يكتب جملاً أو فقرات قصيرة حول الشخصيات، البيئة، أو الأحداث.

- describe the problem and solution.

- يصف المشكلة والحل.

- explain the story's moral using key vocabulary.

- يشرح الدرس الأخلاقي للقصة باستخدام المفردات الرئيسية.

The Lost Kite

Title
العنوان

الطائرة الورقية المفقودة



Warm-up

Omar is an active boy who enjoys spending time outdoors. One sunny afternoon, he meets his friend Sami in the open field near their village. Sami brings a new red kite, and the boys are excited to fly it together. They run, laugh, and watch the kite rise high in the sky. But suddenly, a strong wind blows, and the kite drifts away across the river. Omar and Sami feel worried and start looking for it, hoping someone can help them get it back.

عمر فتى نشيط يستمتع بقضاء الوقت فى الهواء الطلق. بعد ظهر أحد الأيام المشمسة، التقى بصديقه سامى فى الحقل المفتوح بالقرب من قريتهم. يجلب سامى طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة، والأولاد متحمسون للطيران بها معًا. يركضون ويضحكون ويشاهدون الطائرة الورقية ترتفع عاليًا فى السماء. ولكن فجأة، تهب رياح قوية، وتنجرف الطائرة الورقية بعيدًا عبر النهر. يشعر عمر وسامى بالقلق ويبدأن فى البحث عنها، على أمل أن يتمكن شخص ما من مساعدتهما فى استعادتها.



A

Vocabulary



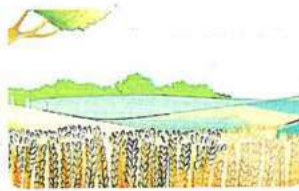
Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



dates

بلح



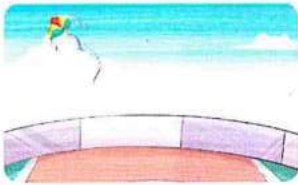
field

حقل



unrolled the string

فك الخيط



drifted

انجرفت / ابتعدت



bridge

جسر / كوبري



mud-brick building

مبنى من الطوب الطيني

B

Story Elements

Title العنوان

The name of the story

اسم القصة

The Lost Kite

الطائرة الورقية المفقودة

Setting المكان

Where and when the story takes place

أين ومتى تجرى أحداث القصة

A quiet village by a wide river, during a sunny afternoon.

قرية هادئة بجانب نهر واسع، في يوم مشمس.

الشخصيات Characters

People in the story

الأشخاص داخل القصة



Omar
عمر



Sami
سامي

الحبكة / المشكلة Plot / Problem

What happens in the story – the sequence of events from beginning to end

ماذا يحدث في القصة - تسلسل الأحداث من البداية إلى النهاية

Omar and Sami go to the field to fly a kite. The wind takes the kite to a roof. They ask the old man for help. He gives the kite back. They fly it again and are happy.

ذهب عمر وسامي إلى الحقل لرفع الطائرة الورقية. أخذت الريح الطائرة إلى سطح بيت. طلبا المساعدة من الرجل العجوز، وأعطاهم الطائرة مرة أخرى. وطارت الطائرة مجدداً وسعد الولدان.

الحل Solution

What happens to fix or solve the problem

ماذا يحدث لإصلاح المشكلة أو حلها

A kind old man helps them by climbing up and returning the kite.

يساعدهم رجل عجوز طيب القلب من خلال التسلق وإعادة الطائرة الورقية.

الدرس الأخلاقي Moral

The lesson or message the story teaches.

- الدرس أو الرسالة التي تعلمها القصة.

Kindness and helping others make the world brighter; never give up.

اللطف ومساعدة الآخرين تجعل العالم أفضل؛ لا تيأس أبداً.



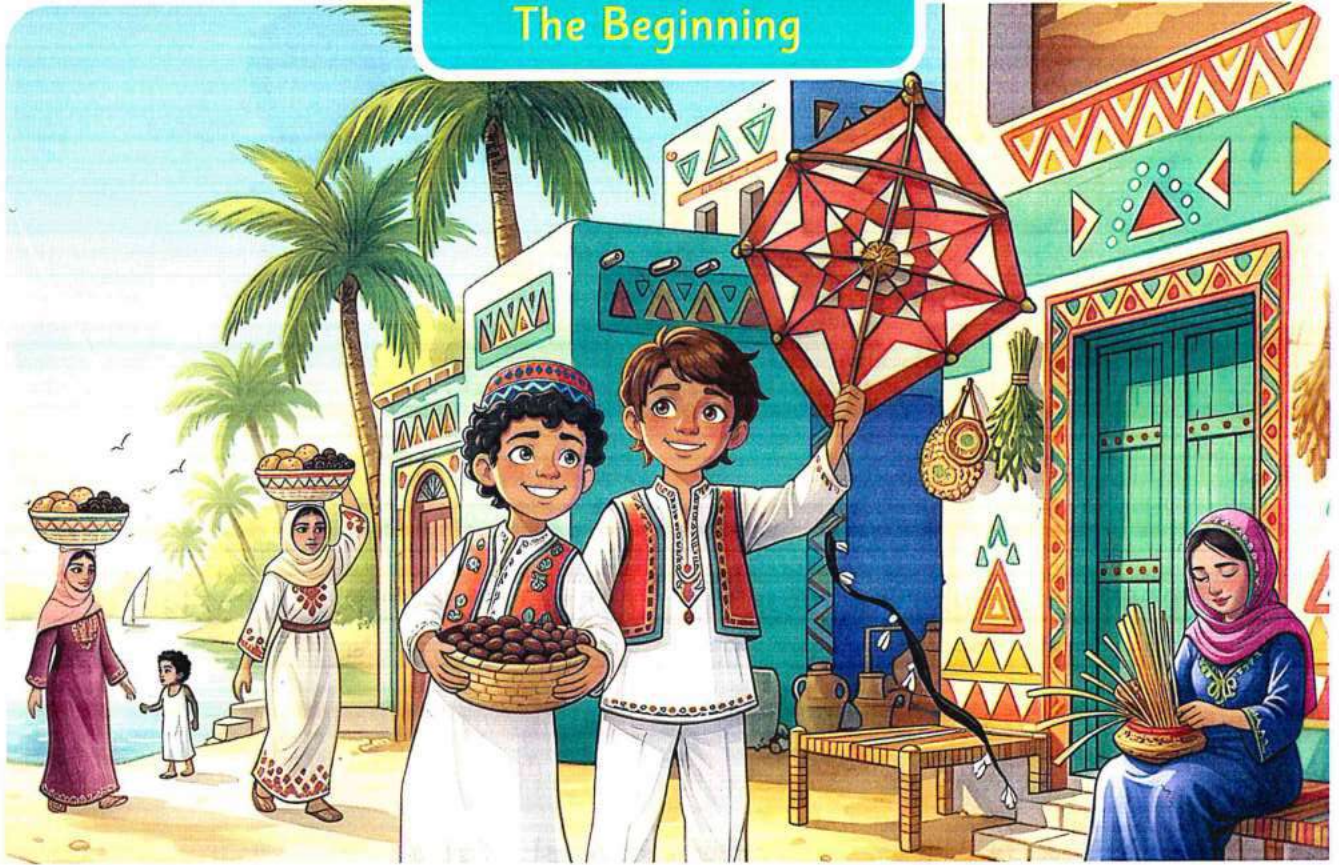
Story



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وقم بتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning



Omar lived in a quiet **village** by a wide river. The village was small, but it was full of life. Children played in the **dusty** streets, women carried baskets to the market, and tall palm trees **swayed** gently in the breeze. Omar loved his home, especially the open field **near the edge of** the village.

One bright and sunny afternoon, Omar's best friend Sami ran to meet him. Sami carried a new red kite, and Omar **held** a basket of sweet dates that his father had picked that morning. "We can eat these when we **get tired**," Omar said with a smile. Sami laughed, "First, let's see how high my kite can fly!"

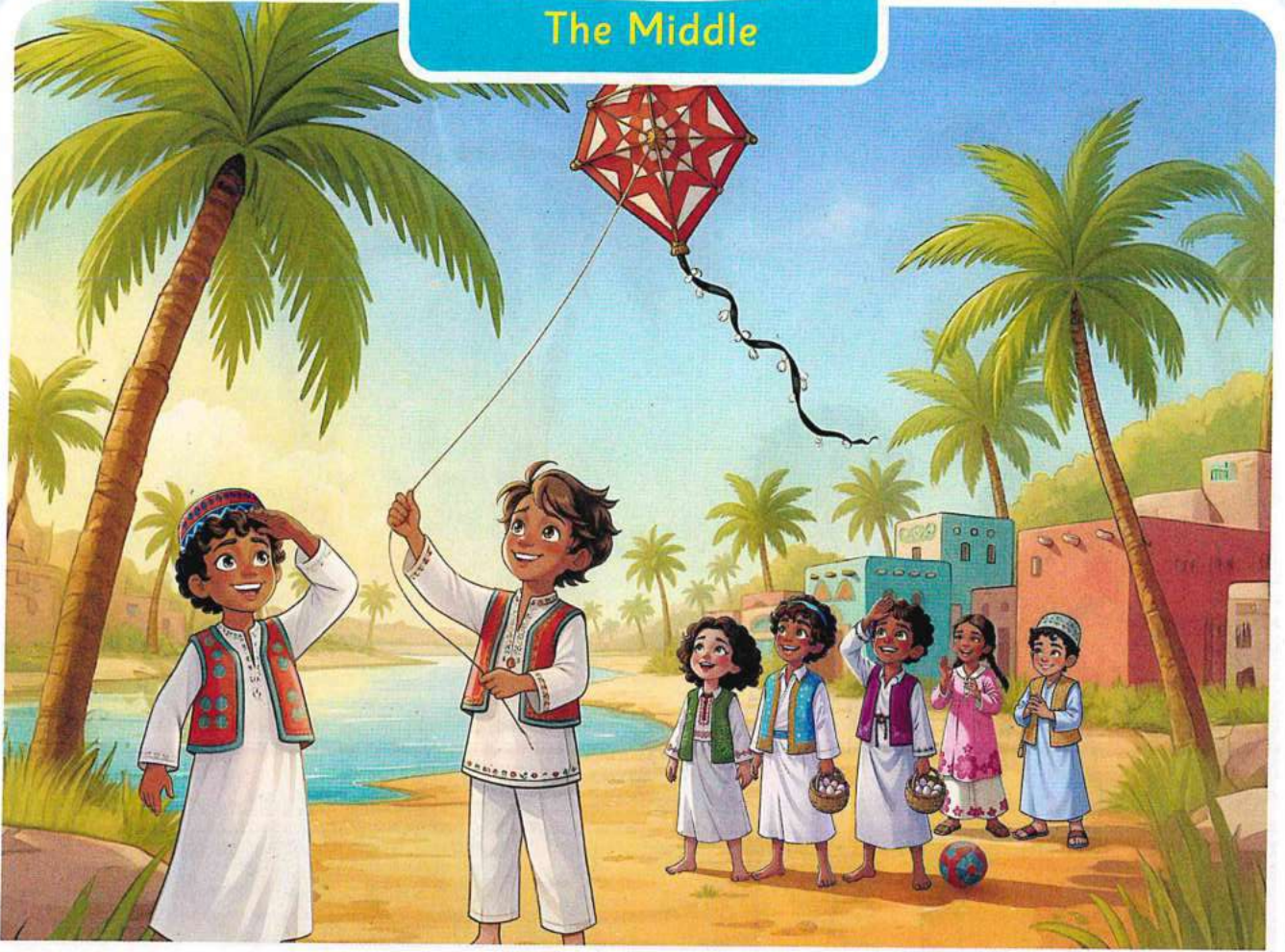
عاش عمر في قرية هادئة بجوار نهر واسع. كانت القرية صغيرة، لكنها كانت مليئة بالحياة. كان الأطفال يلعبون في الشوارع المتربة، والنساء يحملن السلال إلى السوق، وأشجار النخيل الطويلة تتمايل بلطف مع النسيم. أحب عمر منزله، خاصةً الحقل المفتوح القريب من طرف القرية.

في إحدى الظهرات المشرقة والمشمسة، ركض صديق عمر المقرب، سامي، للقاءه. كان سامي يحمل طائرة ورقية حمراء جديدة، وكان عمر يحمل سلة من التمور الحلوة التي قطفها والده في ذلك الصباح. قال عمر بابتسامة: «يمكننا أن نأكل هذه عندما نتعب». ضحك سامي قائلاً: «أولاً، دعنا نرى إلى أي مدى يمكن لطائرتي أن تحلق!».

Keywords

village	قرية	dusty	مغبر	sway	يتمايل
near the edge of	بالقرب من حافة / طرف	hold	يمسك	get tired	يصبح متعباً / مرهقاً

The Middle



When they reached the field, the boys noticed other kids playing nearby. Some were chasing a ball, others were climbing trees, but everyone stopped to watch Sami's bright kite. Sami carefully unrolled the string, and the kite began to **rise**.

"Look, Omar!" he shouted. "It's flying higher than the **palm trees**!" The red kite danced across the blue sky, **moving down** with the wind. The children clapped and cheered. Sami felt proud—his kite was the most beautiful thing he had ever **owned**.

But then, **without warning**, a strong wind **rushed** across the field. Sami tried to hold the string **tightly**, but it **slipped** through his fingers. "No! Come back!" he cried. The kite flew higher and higher until it **drifted** across the river.

عندما وصل الولدان إلى الحقل، لاحظا أطفالاً آخرين يلعبون بالقرب منهما. بعضهم كان يطارد الكرة، والبعض الآخر يتسلق الأشجار، لكن الجميع توقف لمشاهدة طائرة سامي الحمراء الزاهية. فك سامي الخيط بحذر، وبدأت الطائرة ترتفع في السماء.

«انظر يا عمر!» صرخ سامي. «إنها تطير أعلى من أشجار النخيل!» كانت الطائرة الحمراء ترقص في السماء الزرقاء، تتحرك إلى الأسفل مع الرياح. صفق الأطفال وهتفوا. شعر سامي بالفخر—كانت طائرته أجمل شيء امتلكه على الإطلاق.

لكن فجأة، وبدون سابق إنذار، هبت ريح قوية عبر الحقل. حاول سامي أن يمسك بالخيط جيداً، لكنه انزلق من بين أصابعه. صرخ:

«لا! عودي إلي!» ارتفعت الطائرة أكثر وأكثر، حتى انجرفت عبر النهر وابتعدت.

Keywords

rise	يرتفع	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	move down	يتحرك للأسفل
own	يملك	without warning	دون سابق إنذار / فجأة	rush	يندفع / يسرع
tightly	بإحكام / بقوة	slip	ينزلق	drift	ينجرف / يبتعد



The kite finally landed on the roof of an old mud-brick building across the river. Sami's heart sank. "Oh no," he whispered, **tears** forming in his eyes. "I'll never get it back."

Omar put a hand on his friend's **shoulder**. "Don't give up, Sami. Let's try. Maybe someone in that house can help us."

The two boys walked along the dusty road, crossed the small **wooden** bridge over the river, and stopped in front of the old house. Its walls were **faded**, and **vines** climbed around the windows. Sami felt nervous, but Omar **knocked gently** on the wooden door.

أخيرًا، هبطت الطائرة على سطح بيت قديم مصنوع من الطوب الطيني عبر النهر. شعر سامي بالحزن الشديد. والدموع بدأت تتكون في عينيه. همس قائلاً: «يا إلهي... لن أستعيدها أبدًا».

وضع عمر يده على كتف صديقه وقال: «لا تيأس يا سامي. لنجرب. ربما يساعدنا أحد في هذا البيت».

سار الولدان على الطريق الترابي، وعبرا الجسر الخشبي الصغير فوق النهر، وتوقفا أمام البيت القديم. كانت جدرانه باهتة، وتسلق النباتات الكروم (نباتات متسلقة) حول النوافذ. شعر سامي بالتوتر، لكن عمر طرق الباب الخشبي برفق.

Keywords

tears

دموع

shoulder

كتف

wooden

خشبي

faded

باهت/ فقد لونه

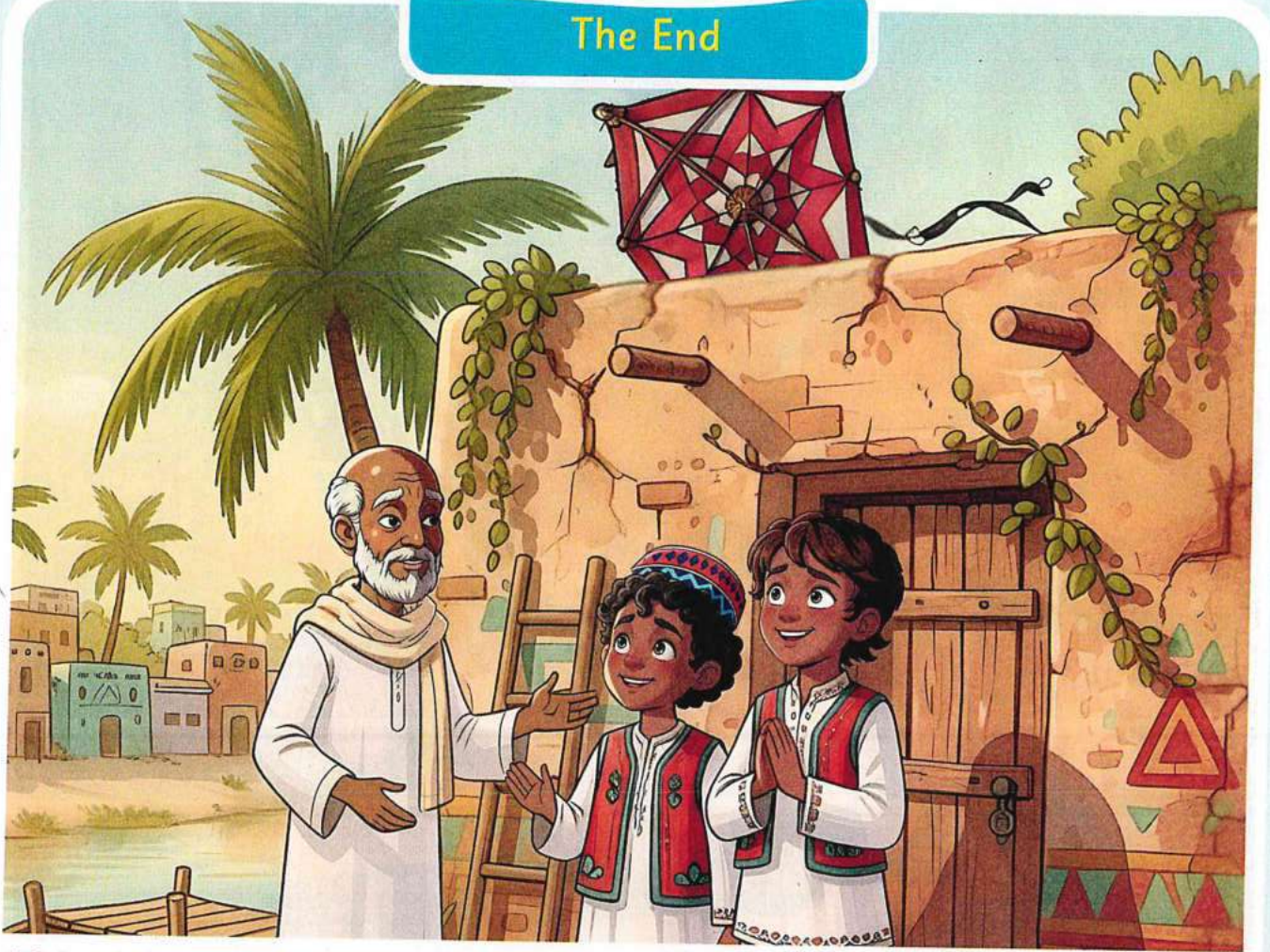
vines

كروم/ نباتات متسلقة

knock gently

يطرق برفق

The End



After a moment, the door creaked open. An old man with kind eyes and a white beard appeared. "Hello!" he greeted warmly. "What brings you here?"

Sami stepped forward shyly. "My kite... it flew away and landed on your roof. Could you help us, please?"

The old man chuckled. "Ah, I saw it! A very fine kite indeed." He fetched a small ladder and slowly climbed up. The boys watched anxiously as he reached out and untangled the kite from the tiles. Finally, he climbed down carefully and placed the kite back into Sami's hands.

"Here you are, young man," he said with a smile. "Take care to hold it tighter next time."

بعد لحظة، فُتح الباب بصريير. ظهر رجل عجوز ذو عينيْن حنوتين ولحية بيضاء. «مرحبًا!» حَيَّاهم بدفء. «ما الذى أتى بكم إلى هنا؟».

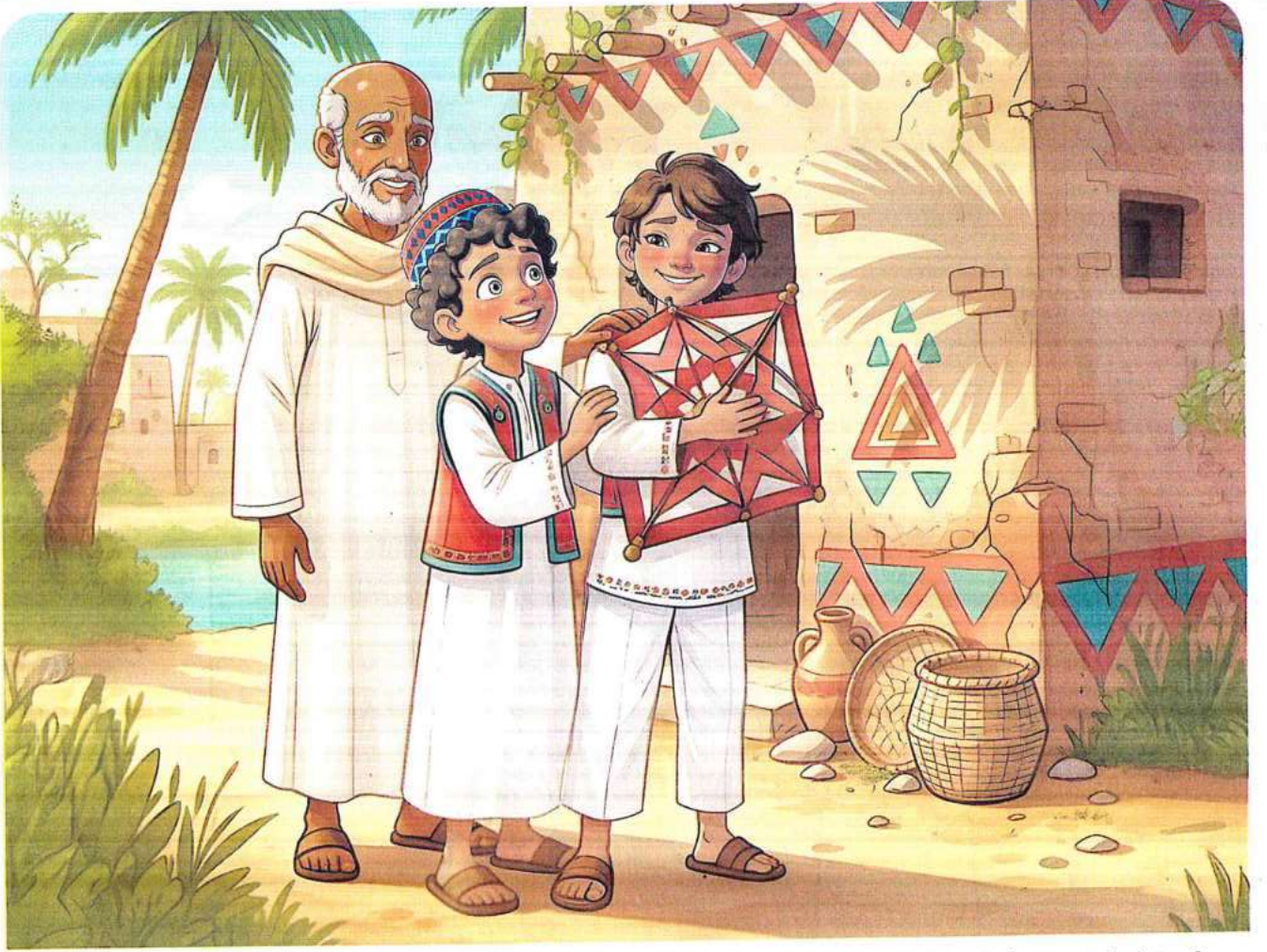
تقدم سامى بخجل. «طائرَتى الورقية... لقد طارت وهبطت على سطح منزلك. هل يمكنك مساعدتنا، من فضلك؟».

ضحك الرجل العجوز. «آه، لقد رأيتهَا! إنها طائِرة ورقية رائعة جدًّا بالفعل.» أحضر سلمًا صغيرًا وتسلق ببطء. راقب الصبيان بقلق وهو يمد يده ويخلص الطائِرة الورقية من بين قطع القرميد (البلاط). أخيرًا، نزل بحذر ووضع الطائِرة الورقية مرة أخرى فى يد سامى.

قال بابتسامة: «تفضل، أيها الشاب. احرص على أن تمسك بها بإحكام أكبر فى المرة القادمة».

Keywords

after a moment	بعد لحظة	creak	يصرُّ / يصدر صوتًا خفيًّا عند الفتح	beard	لحية
step forward	يتقدَّم إلى الأمام	chuckle	يضحك ضحكة خفيفة	fetch	يجلب / يحضر
anxiously	بقلق / بترقب	untangle	يفكُّ / يحزِّر	tiles	البلاط



Sami **hugged** his kite tightly. "Thank you, sir! You saved my day," he said, his face **glowing** with joy. Omar added, "We will always remember your kindness."

The old man nodded. "Kindness makes the world brighter, just like your red kite in the sky."

The boys waved goodbye and ran back to the field. This time, Sami held the string with both hands while Omar stood beside him, ready to help. The kite rose once again, **soaring** high above the village. Sami and Omar laughed as it danced against the blue sky, happy that their **adventure** had a wonderful ending.

عَانَقَ سامي طائرته الورقية بقوة. «شكراً لك يا سيدى! ، قال ووجهه يَتَلَأَلُ بالفرح. لقد أَنْقَذْتَ يومى» وأضاف عمر: «ستذكر لطفك دائماً».

أوماً الرجل العجوز برأسه. «اللطف يجعل العالم أكثر إشراقاً، تماماً مثل طائرتك الورقية الحمراء فى السماء».

لَوَّحَ الصبيان وداعاً وركضا عائدين إلى الحقل. هذه المرة، أمسك سامى بالخيط بكلتا يديه بينما وقف عمر بجانبه، مستعداً للمساعدة. ارتفعت الطائرة الورقية مرة أخرى، محلقة عالياً فوق القرية. ضحك سامى وعمر وهى ترقص فى السماء الزرقاء، سعيدين لأن مغامرتهم انتهت نهاية رائعة.

Keywords

hug

يعانق / يحتضن

glow

يلمع

soar

يرتفع عالياً / يحلّق

adventure

مغامرة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Where did Omar and Sami go to play with the kite?
 - a) In the market.
 - b) In the open field near the village.
 - c) On the riverbank.
 - d) On the roof of a house.
- 2 How did the children in the village react when Sami's kite flew?
 - a) They ignored it.
 - b) They clapped and cheered.
 - c) They ran away.
 - d) They asked for the kite.
- 3 What problem did the boys face?
 - a) Their basket of dates fell into the river.
 - b) Their kite got landed on a roof.
 - c) They lost their way home.
 - d) A storm broke their kite.
- 4 How did the boys solve their problem?
 - a) They built a new kite.
 - b) They climbed the tree together and freed the kite.
 - c) They asked a neighbor for help.
 - d) They decided to play another game.
- 5 What lesson do the boys learn?
 - a) Sharing is not important.
 - b) Working together helps solve problems.
 - c) It's better to play alone.
 - d) Kites are too difficult to play with.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kite – field – bridge – roof – pick

Omar and Sami were friends. They lived in a quiet village. They went to the (1)..... . The boys wanted to fly their red (2)..... . A strong wind blew, and the kite flew away across the river. It landed on the (3)..... of an old house. The boys crossed the (4)..... and met a kind old man who helped them get it back.

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Sami carried a basket of dates. (.....)
- 2 Omar's kite flew high in the sky before it got stuck. (.....)
- 3 The boys gave up and went home. (.....)
- 4 They solved the problem by helping each other. (.....)
- 5 The story shows the importance of teamwork. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where did Omar live?
.....
- 2 What did Sami carry when he ran to meet Omar?
.....
- 3 Where did the kite land after the strong wind blew it away?
.....
- 4 Who helped Sami get his kite back?
.....
- 5 How did Sami feel when the old man returned the kite?
.....

5 Read again and fill in the blanks:

- 1 Omar carried a of dates.
- 2 The boys lived in a small near the river.
- 3 The kite got stuck in a
- 4 The boys had a but they worked together.
- 5 Finally, they found a

6 Match each story element to the correct part of the story:

Story Element	Description
1 Title	a. Omar and Sami go to the field to fly a kite.
2 Setting	b. <i>The Lost Kite</i>
3 Characters	c. Kindness and helping others make the world brighter.
4 Plot	d. Omar, Sami, and the old man;
5 Moral	e. a quiet village by a wide river;



STUDENT BOOK REVIEW

Our Class Wins the Best Decoration!

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Last Thursday, our class won the best decoration **competition**⁽¹⁾! We worked very hard all week to make our classroom look colorful and cheerful. We used balloons, ribbons, and **posters**⁽²⁾ with drawings and messages. Everyone in the class helped clean, arrange the tables, and hang the decorations carefully. Some students drew pictures, while others wrote **signs**⁽³⁾ to make the classroom look lively. The **judges**⁽⁴⁾ walked around and smiled at our work. When they **announced**⁽⁵⁾ that our class was the **winner**⁽⁶⁾, we all cheered and clapped. We felt proud of our teamwork and creativity. Afterward, we celebrated by taking photos, sharing snacks, and talking about our favorite decorations. It was a wonderful day!

(1)	مسابقة
(2)	ملصقات
(3)	لافتات
(4)	حكام
(5)	أعلن
(6)	فائز

Checkpoint Circle the correct answer:

- What did the students use to decorate their classroom?
 - Books and toys.
 - Balloons, ribbons, and posters.
 - Paint and glitter.
- How did the judges react to the decorations?
 - They smiled and asked questions.
 - They ignored the classroom.
 - They told the students to clean up.
- What did the students do after winning?
 - They went home early.
 - They celebrated by taking photos and sharing snacks.
 - They started decorating again.

يوم الخميس الماضي، فاز فصلنا في مسابقة أفضل زينة! لقد عملنا بجد طوال الأسبوع لجعل صفنا يبدو مليئاً ومبهجاً. استخدمنا البالونات والشرائط والملصقات التي تحتوي على رسومات ورسائل. ساعد جميع الطلاب في تنظيف الصف، وترتيب الطاولة، وتعليق الزينة بعناية. قام بعض الطلاب برسم الصور، بينما كتب آخرون لافتات لجعل الصف يبدو حياً. سار الحكام حول الصف وابتسموا لعملنا. وعندما أعلنوا أن فصلنا هو الفائز، صفقنا جميعاً وهتفنا. شعرنا بالفخر بسبب عملنا الجماعي وإبداعنا. وبعد ذلك، احتفلنا بالتقاط الصور، ومشاركة الوجبات الخفيفة، والتحدث عن زينتنا المفضلة. لقد كان يوماً رائعاً!

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each Two Units
- Story Corner
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 15 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests

Units 1 and 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

environment	بيئة	buildings	المبانى	forest	غابة
desert	صحراء	city	مدينة	village	قرية
oasis	واحة	river	نهر	neighbors	الجيران
tents	الخيام	wells	الآبار	advantages	مزايا
raise animals	يربى حيوانات	traveler	مسافر	adapt	يتكيف
challenges	التحديات	quiet	هادئ	busy	مشغول
beside	بجانب	villagers	القرويون	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
clear water	مياه صافية	distance	مسافة	riverbank	ضفة النهر
sellers	البائعون	fisherman	صياد	fields	الحقول
boat	قارب	sail	يبحر	relaxed	مسترخ
crops	المحاصيل	history	تاريخ	mountains	الجبال
peaceful	مسالم	paths	مسارات / طرق	simply	ببساطة

Unit 2

guide	مرشد	plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	both sides	كلا الجانبين
protect	يحمى	instead of	بدلاً من	send emails	يرسل رسائل البريد الإلكتروني
recycle	إعادة التدوير	throwing	رمى	pollution	تلوث
reduce	يقلل	away	بعيد	ride a bike	يركب الدراجة
reuse	يعيد الاستخدام	important	مهم	great idea	فكرة عظيمة
planet	كوكب	old bags	حقائب قديمة	shopping	التسوق
apply	يطبق	materials	مواد	sea animals	حيوانات البحر
save	يحفظ	take care of	يعتنى بـ	bin	سلة المهملات
nature	طبيعة	waste	يهدر	surroundings	محيط
amount of	كمية من	project	مشروع	safe	آمن
less of	أقل من	electricity	كهرباء	resources	موارد
avoid	يتجنب	metal	معدن	run out	ينفذ / ينتهي
paper	ورق	situation	الموقف	wisely	بحكمة
plastic	بلاستيك	refilling a bottle	إعادة ملء الزجاجة	Earth	كوكب الأرض
stand for	يُمثل	new	جديد	gas	غاز
old things	الأشياء القديمة	tote bags	حقائب قماش	turning off	إيقاف التشغيل

Practice



on Vocabulary Units 1 and 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We must protect the by keeping the air and water clean.
a) school b) environment c) bedroom d) house
- 2 The camel walked slowly across the hot
a) forest b) garden c) mountain d) desert
- 3 A/An is a place in the desert where plants can grow.
a) island b) oasis c) farm d) cave
- 4 The village built new to get clean water.
a) rivers b) roads c) schools d) wells
- 5 The caught a lot of fish from the sea today.
a) fisherman b) doctor c) farmer d) teacher
- 6 The farmer animals, like cows and sheep, on his land.
a) drew b) raised c) planted d) sold
- 7 Life in the desert has many, like heat and little water.
a) challenges b) holidays c) gifts d) secrets
- 8 The packed his bags and left for a long journey.
a) student b) teacher c) traveler d) driver
- 9 The in the market were kind and offered good prices.
a) singers b) drivers c) farmers d) sellers
- 10 We crossed the river in a small
a) car b) plane c) boat d) train

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

sellers – villagers – oasis – quiet – fisherman

In a small village, life was simple and peaceful. The (1)..... woke up early and went to the fields to look at their crops. A (2)..... stood by the riverbank and tried to catch fish. In the market, (3)..... sold fruits and vegetables. Tall palm trees stood near the village, making the place (4)..... and beautiful.

B

school – buildings – village – mountains – city

There are many different places to visit in our country. The (1)..... is always busy with cars and tall (2)..... In the (3)....., life is quiet and simple. A river runs near the green forest, and the high (4)..... make the view beautiful and calm.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should recycle to help the environment.
a) plastic bottles b) pillows c) toys d) shoes
- 2 We must sea animals by keeping the ocean clean.
a) follow b) forget c) draw d) protect
- 3 I used a metal bottle a plastic one.
a) next to b) instead of c) after d) before
- 4 Many people instead of writing letters.
a) send emails b) cook food c) sing songs d) drive cars
- 5 It is good to paper and plastic to reduce waste.
a) break b) hide c) buy d) recycle
- 6 trash on the ground is bad for the environment.
a) Reading b) Eating c) Throwing d) Cleaning
- 7 Factories cause air when they make smoke in the sky.
a) vacation b) pollution c) celebration d) decoration
- 8 Riding a bike pollution.
a) reduces b) makes c) increases d) listens
- 9 We can old bottles to reduce trash.
a) lose b) hide c) break d) reuse
- 10 Clean water is very for health.
a) heavy b) important c) expensive d) dirty

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A wisely – off – Refilling – reduce – gas

The Earth has many resources, but they can run out if we waste them. That is why we should use them (1)..... . We can save (2)..... by walking or riding a bike, and we can save water by turning (3)..... the tap when we finish using it. (4)..... a bottle instead of throwing it away also helps protect our planet and keeps it clean.

B white – tote – green – surroundings – bin

We can all help keep our planet clean and healthy. To go (1)....., we can use less paper, walk or ride a bike instead of using many cars, and use (2)..... bags instead of plastic ones. We should always throw trash in the (3)..... and remind others to keep our (4)..... clean. When we work together, we make our planet safe and beautiful for everyone.

Units 1 and 2



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

The Past Simple Tense

- The past simple tense talks about actions that already happened in the past.
يتحدث زمن الماضي البسيط عن أفعال حدثت بالفعل في الماضي.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة

yesterday, last (night/week/year), ago, in (2000), when I was young,
earlier today, a few days ago

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الأثبات

1. **Regular Verbs:** add -d, -ed, or -ied to the base form:

like liked visit visited study studied

2. **Irregular Verbs:** each verb has a different spelling in the past:

go went take took buy bought

e.g. Yesterday, I played football with my friends.
Ahmed bought a new house last month.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + did not (didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. I didn't watch TV yesterday.

لاحظ: يأتي الفعل الأساسي في صيغة المصدر inf. بسبب وجود كلمة didn't.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...?

Answer	Yes,	subject	did.
	No,		didn't.

e.g. A: Did you go to the park last week?

B: Yes, I did.

OR

B: No, I didn't.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word + did + subject + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...?

B: Subject + (التصريف الثاني للفعل) ...

A: Where did you go last weekend?

B: I went to Paris.

Unit 2

Conjunctions الروابط

Conjunctions	Examples
nor adds a second negative idea يضيف فكرة سلبية ثانية	We don't burn plastic, nor do we throw it on the ground. نحن لا نحرق البلاستيك، ولا نلقه على الأرض.
so shows a result يظهر نتيجة	We sort the waste, so our neighborhood stays clean. نقوم بفرز النفايات حتى يبقى حيونا نظيفًا.
because shows a reason or cause يظهر سببًا أو علة	We recycle paper because it helps save trees. نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق؛ لأنه يساعد في إنقاذ الأشجار.
but shows contrast يظهر التباين (التناقض)	I like apples, but I don't like bananas. أنا أحب التفاح، ولكنني لا أحب الموز.
and joins similar ideas يربط أفكارًا مماثلة	She is smart and kind. إنها ذكية ولطيفة.
or shows a choice between two or more things يظهر خيارًا بين شيئين أو أكثر	We can walk or take the bus. يمكننا المشي أو ركوب الحافلة.

لاحظ: عند استخدام "nor" لربط جملتين منفيتين:

تكملة الجملة + فاعل + فعل مساعد مثبت + nor + (جملة منفية) Negative sentence

e.g. He can't swim, **nor can he** run fast.

Practice



on Grammar Units 1 and 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When you sleep last night?
a) am b) was c) do d) did
- 2 She to the park last Sunday.
a) go b) went c) goes d) going
- 3 We didn't football after school.
a) play b) played c) plays d) playing
- 4 Hamza his breakfast quickly yesterday.
a) eat b) ate c) eating d) eats
- 5 They watch a movie last night.
a) don't b) doesn't c) aren't d) didn't
- 6 My mom a cake for my birthday a week ago.
a) make b) making c) made d) makes
- 7 I my bike to school yesterday.
a) ride b) rode c) rides d) riding
- 8 she clean her room yesterday?
a) Did b) Do c) Does d) Is
- 9 The children in the pool last week.
a) swim b) swimming c) swims d) swam
- 10 We didn't our grandparents last weekend.
a) visit b) visited c) visits d) are visiting

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (clean) my room yesterday.
- 2 A: (Did) you at the library last week? B: Yes, I was.
- 3 My father (fix) his car yesterday.
- 4 They (not/visit) their cousins last week.
- 5 He (write) a letter to his friend last month.
- 6 The children (don't) play in the park yesterday.
- 7 I (not/see) my teacher yesterday.
- 8 We didn't (had) lunch at a restaurant.
- 9 Where (do) they go yesterday?
- 10 My brother (go) to the library yesterday.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We want to protect the planet, we use less plastic.
a) but b) so c) or d) nor
- 2 She turned off the light she wanted to save energy.
a) because b) nor c) but d) and
- 3 I didn't throw trash on the ground, did my sister.
a) so b) nor c) because d) or
- 4 We reused old bags we didn't want to waste plastic ones.
a) but b) or c) nor d) because
- 5 You can walk to school, you can ride your bike.
a) and b) so c) or d) because
- 6 He wanted to play outside, it was too hot.
a) so b) and c) nor d) but
- 7 They cleaned the beach, it became more beautiful.
a) but b) so c) nor d) or
- 8 We recycle bottles cans to help the Earth.
a) and b) because c) nor d) so
- 9 She doesn't waste food, does she waste water.
a) so b) and c) nor d) because
- 10 I brought my water bottle, I didn't need to buy a new one.
a) but b) so c) nor d) or

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We should save water (nor) plant more trees to protect nature.
- 2 I didn't throw trash on the ground, (and) did my friend.
- 3 She brought a reusable bottle (nor) she cares about the planet.
- 4 We cleaned the beach, (or) the sea animals stay safe.
- 5 He wanted to cross the road, (so) the light was red.
- 6 Don't waste paper (because) always recycle old books.
- 7 I didn't forget my bag, (or) did I forget my lunch.
- 8 We stayed inside (so) it was very windy outside.
- 9 You can recycle cans (nor) reuse glass jars at home.
- 10 The students planted trees, (nor) they watered the flowers.

Units 3 and 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

neighborhood	حيّ	food packages	عبوات غذائية	vegetables	الخضراوات
elderly	كبير في السن	delivery	توصيل	promise	وعد
climb the stairs	يصعد الدرج	volunteers	متطوعون	rice	أرز
beans	فول	bananas	الموز	poor people	الفقراء
call out	ينادي	cucumbers	خيار	biscuits	البسكويت
tomatoes	الطماطم	knocked on	طرقت على	cheese	جبّ
pack the food	يعبئ الطعام	a carton of	كرتونة من	prepare	يجهز / يعد
picnic	نزهة	dessert	حلوى	tea	شاي
a bar of	قطعة من	a slice of	شريحة من	a pack of	عبوة من
a bottle of	زجاجة من	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	a piece of	قطعة من
a kilo of	كيلو من	healthy	صحي	apples	التفاح
share	يشارك	peaches	الخوخ	arrange	يرتب
crunchy	مقرمش	cooler	مبرد	a bunch of	مجموعة من
snack station	ركن الوجبات الخفيفة	cleanliness	نظافة	counter	طاولة
lettuce	خسّ	milk	لبن	plate	طبق
chocolate	الشوكولاتة	orange juice	عصير البرتقال	bread	خبز

Unit 4

family gathering	تجمع عائلي	hide-and-seek	الغميضة	wear special clothes	ارتداء ملابس خاصة
exchange gifts	تبادل الهدايا	band	فرقة	take photos	يلتقط الصور
perform music	أداء الموسيقى	appreciate	يقدّر	celebration	احتفال
play a game	يلعب لعبة	efforts	جهود	colorful	ملون
eat special food	يتناول طعامًا خاصًا	chess	الشطرنج	balloons	بالونات
socialize with friends	التواصل مع الأصدقاء	delicious	لذيذ	fences	أسوار
grilled	مشوي	relatives	أقارب	unforgettable	لا ينسى
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	ribbons	شرائط	clap	يصفق
playground	ملعب	cheerful	مبتهج	laughter	ضحك
shiny	لامع	candles	الشموع	blew out	أطفأ
enormous	ضخم	giveaways	هدايا مجانية	make a wish	يتمنى أمنية
carefully	بعناية	decorate	يزين	wrapped	مغلف
bright	ساطع	party hat	قبعة الحفلة	lively	حيوي
remember	يتذكر	presents	هدايا	Labor Day	عيد العمال
guests	الضيوف	workers	عمال	wonderful	رائع

Practice



on Vocabulary Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My mom bought fresh from the market.
a) vegetables b) pillows c) pencils d) shoes
- 2 The boy helped the man cross the street.
a) short b) strong c) elderly d) busy
- 3 Please the stairs to the second floor carefully.
a) read b) climb c) close d) sit
- 4 We live in a small
a) garden b) bus c) school d) neighborhood
- 5 She ate chocolate after dinner.
a) a bar of b) a cup of c) a bottle of d) a bowl of
- 6 The volunteers the food and gave it to poor families.
a) broke b) ate c) packed d) played
- 7 The volunteers the families' doors to give food.
a) knocked on b) kicked c) painted d) ignored
- 8 After finishing lunch, we enjoyed a sweet
a) dessert b) salad c) sandwich d) soup
- 9 The lunch was already before we arrived.
a) lost b) broken c) prepared d) thrown
- 10 The charity helped many in the city.
a) poor people b) teachers c) players d) tourists

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

park – package – slice – fruit – bottle

Last Friday, my family and I went on a picnic in the park. We took a big (1)..... with us full of food and drinks. I brought a (2)..... of orange juice and some fresh (3)..... We sat on the grass, ate our food, and enjoyed the sunny weather. It was a wonderful day at the (4).....!

B

bar – cucumbers – healthy – butter – milk

At school, we have a snack station where we can choose what to eat. I like to pick (1)..... food, like a banana and a glass of (2)..... Sometimes, I eat a little (3)..... of chocolate for a treat. My favorite breakfast is bread with (4)..... and milk. Eating healthy food helps me stay strong and happy!

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We had a big at my grandfather's house last Friday.
a) school day b) family gathering c) football match d) picnic
- 2 During Eid, children like to special clothes and visit their relatives.
a) wear b) fight c) sleep d) read books
- 3 We with our friends during birthdays.
a) exchange gifts b) cook dinner c) study d) do homework
- 4 The played beautiful songs on the stage.
a) baby b) band c) chef d) doctor
- 5 Let's take to remember this happy day.
a) money b) a nap c) food d) photos
- 6 The students will music at the school concert.
a) perform b) wash c) eat d) draw
- 7 She opened her birthday with a big smile.
a) music b) relatives c) presents d) pencil
- 8 We had a big for my sister's birthday.
a) lesson b) celebration c) meeting d) journey
- 9 When people gifts, they show love and friendship.
a) exchange b) fight c) study d) exercise
- 10 We watched the beautiful in the sky at night.
a) candles b) fireworks c) animals d) sun

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

blew – candles – giveaways – cake – wish

Yesterday was my birthday, and I felt very cheerful. My family brought me a big cake with many (1)..... on it. I made a (2)..... before I (3)..... out the candles. My friends gave me beautifully wrapped presents and some small (4)..... to remember the day. It was a wonderful and happy birthday!

B

balloons – laughter – fireworks – unforgettable – grilled

Family days are always full of fun and happiness. Last Friday, I spent an (1)..... day with my family. We played chess and decorated the garden with (2)..... My mother cooked (3)..... chicken for lunch. The food was really delicious, and everyone was happy. It was a wonderful family day full of love and (4).....!



Unit 3

Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- تسبق بأداة نكرة (a - an)، إذا كانت مفردة.
- ويمكن أن يسبقها رقم.

e.g. a pen, an apple, two chairs, five books

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ولا تجمع:

- لا تسبق بأداة نكرة a/an.

- لا تسبق برقم.

e.g. water, rice, milk, sugar, cheese

- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام بعض التعبيرات مع الاسماء الغير معدودة.

e.g. a carton of milk / a piece of cheese

Container	حاوية	Kind of food/drink	Examples
carton of		milk – juice	I bought a carton of milk . اشترت عبوة من اللبن.
bottle of		juice – water	I drank a bottle of water . شربت زجاجة من المياه.
bar of		chocolate	My mom ate a bar of chocolate . أكلت والدتي قطعة من الشوكولاتة.
pack of		biscuits	The girl bought a pack of biscuits . البنيت اشترت عبوة من البسكويت.
piece of		cheese	He ate a piece of cheese . هو أكل قطعة من الجبن.
slice of		bread – cheese	I ate 2 slices of bread for breakfast. أكلت شريحتين من الخبز في وجبة الإفطار.
glass of		water – juice	Can I have a glass of water ? هل يمكنني تناول كوب من الماء؟
kilo of		cucumbers	My mother bought a kilo of cucumbers . اشترت والدتي كيلو من الخيار.

Unit 4

Adjectives

Describing people	Describing objects	Describing places	Describing feelings/events
tall, short, kind, friendly, happy	big, small, colorful, shiny, soft	quiet, busy, peaceful, beautiful, crowded	exciting, fun, amazing, wonderful, boring

Practice



on Grammar Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I'm hungry. Can I have bread, please?
a) a bar of b) a slice of c) many d) an
- 2 There are five on the shelf.
a) apples b) milk c) rice d) sugar
- 3 She wants juice with her breakfast.
a) a chair b) a carton c) many d) an
- 4 He bought of chocolate from the store.
a) a bar b) a cup c) a bottle d) an
- 5 I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please? **SB**
a) a b) an c) a glass of d) many
- 6 There are ten around the table. We need to put some away. **SB**
a) chairs b) milk c) cheese d) water
- 7 My mom needs tomatoes for the salad.
a) a b) four c) bottle d) slice
- 8 There isn't sugar in the bowl.
a) some b) any c) many d) a piece of
- 9 She bought orange from the market.
a) a b) an c) a piece of d) two
- 10 He needs water before he goes running.
a) a b) an c) a bottle of d) many

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I want (an) sandwich for lunch.
- 2 She drank (a piece of) juice after sports class.
- 3 They saw (some) elephant at the zoo.
- 4 There is (any) egg on the plate.
- 5 She wrote with (five) pen in her notebook.
- 6 We need (slices of) milk to make a cake.
- 7 We have (a) apples to eat.
- 8 I have (an) banana in my lunchbox.
- 9 He has (an) pencil in his bag.
- 10 There is (a) apple on the table.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My teacher is; she always helps everyone.
a) tall b) kind c) colorful d) quiet
- 2 The boy is very; he smiles and talks to everyone.
a) friendly b) shiny c) boring d) crowded
- 3 The picture is very; it has many bright colors.
a) short b) quiet c) colorful d) kind
- 4 The basketball player is and can reach the basket easily.
a) short b) peaceful c) small d) tall
- 5 The movie was; everyone laughed and had a great time.
a) fun b) quiet c) short d) kind
- 6 It was a/an day when I won the race.
a) shiny b) enormous c) exciting d) small
- 7 The fireworks show was really to watch.
a) tall b) amazing c) short d) quiet
- 8 The lesson was; I felt sleepy.
a) friendly b) tall c) colorful d) boring
- 9 Everyone felt when they saw their friend again.
a) happy b) crowded c) soft d) boring
- 10 The village is; there are no loud noises.
a) exciting b) quiet c) colorful d) short

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The baby is very (**angry**); she is smiling and laughing.
- 2 My brother is (**short**); he can easily reach the top shelf.
- 3 The cake tastes (**boring**); everyone loves it!
- 4 The desert is (**wet**); there is no water there.
- 5 The movie was (**boring**); we couldn't stop laughing.
- 6 The cat's fur is (**hard**); it feels soft and nice.
- 7 The park is (**ugly**); it has many colorful flowers.
- 8 The city is (**quiet**); there are cars everywhere.
- 9 My grandmother is very (**unkind**); she always helps everyone.
- 10 The trip was (**sad**); it was full of fun and excitement.

Unit 5



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

history	تاريخ	heritage	تراث	adventure	مغامرة
water springs	ينابيع المياه	historical site	الموقع التاريخي	snorkeling	الغطس
bedouins	البدو	traditional life	الحياة التقليدية	starfish	نجم البحر
tents	الخيام	tourists	السياح	hiking	جولة على الأقدام
desert	صحراء	under	تحت	wish	يتمنى
village	قرية	passed down	متوارث	Dahab	مدينة دهب
generations	الأجيال	Oyoun Mousa	عيون موسى	holiday	إجازة
South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	fresh	منعش	definitely	بالتأكيد
cool breeze	نسيم بارد	Moses Springs	ينابيع موسى	scuba diving	الغوص
journey	رحلة	visitors	الزوار	horseback riding	ركوب الخيل
enjoy	يتمتع	seafood	المأكولات البحرية	corals	الشعاب المرجانية
near	قريب	interesting	ممتع	vacation	أجازة
local	محلي	natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	mid-year	منتصف السنة
ports	الموانئ	Port Fouad	بور فؤاد	sea animals	حيوانات البحر
Port Said	بورسعيد	ships	السفن	the Blue Hole	الثقب الأزرق
the Corniche	الكورنيش	the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	perfect	ممتاز
sailing	الإبحار	cheerful noise	ضجيج مبهج	mountains	الجبال
seagulls	طيور النورس	ride	جولة	here	هنا
ferry	العبرة	sea view	إطلالة على البحر		



on Vocabulary Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The bedouins often sleep in when they move from place to place.
a) houses b) cars c) huts d) tents
- 2 Bedouin families still follow a lifestyle in the desert.
a) modern b) city c) traditional d) busy
- 3 Oyoum Mousa has fresh where visitors can drink and enjoy.
a) mountains b) water springs c) schools d) bridges
- 4 The often guide travelers through the desert.
a) farmers b) fishermen c) bedouins d) pilots
- 5 Farmers pick fresh dates from tall every summer.
a) mango trees b) orange trees c) apple trees d) palm trees
- 6 Oyoum Mousa is a famous natural in Egypt.
a) restaurant b) wonder c) market d) house
- 7 Mariam tried for the first time and saw turtles in the water.
a) cooking b) snorkeling c) reading d) painting
- 8 The hikers reached the top of the after a long walk.
a) mountain b) classroom c) bus d) store
- 9 The desert safari was an exciting for my family.
a) adventure b) class c) session d) homework
- 10 Samir brought a camera to during the trip.
a) climb a mountain b) take photos c) drink water d) call friends

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

village – desert – Blue Hole – traditions – bedouins

Many people visit this place to learn about its history. There are beautiful water springs in the middle of the (1)..... The (2)..... live nearby, and they stay in tents close to their (3)..... They have lived this way for many generations, keeping their (4)..... and simple life.

B

wonder – trip – mountains – ships – Port Fouad

People enjoy traveling during the mid-year vacation. My family and I visited (1)....., and it was very interesting. We saw big (2)..... and many sea animals. We also went to the Blue Hole, a famous natural (3)..... It was a wonderful (4).....!

Unit 5



B) Revision on Grammar

Should and Shouldn't

Usage:

We use "should / shouldn't" for giving advice.

Affirmative Form:

Subject + **should** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (rest of the sentence).

e.g. You **should wear** a hat.

ينبغي عليك ارتداء قبعة.

e.g. We **should sleep** early.

ينبغي علينا أن ننام مبكرًا.

Negative Form:

Subject + **should not (shouldn't)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (rest of the sentence).

e.g. You **shouldn't forget** your umbrella.

لا ينبغي لك أن تنسى مظلتك.

e.g. You **shouldn't touch** the starfish.

لا ينبغي أن تلمس نجمة البحر.

Question:

Yes / No Question: **Should** + subject + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (rest of the sentence)?

e.g. A: **Should I wear** a jacket today?

هل يجب علي أن أرتدي سترة اليوم؟

B: Yes, you **should**. / B: No, you **shouldn't**.

Should we do sports every day?

هل يجب علينا أن نمارس الرياضة كل يوم؟

A: Yes, you **should**. / B: No, you **shouldn't**.

Wh-Question:

Wh- word + **should** + subject + **inf.** مصدر الفعل + (rest of the sentence)?

e.g. A: What **should I do** to stay healthy?

ماذا يجب أن أفعل لأبقى بصحة جيدة؟

B: You **should** eat healthy food.

يجب عليك أن تأكل طعامًا صحيًا.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The pan is very hot. You touch it.
a) should b) can c) must d) shouldn't
- 2 A: Should you eat candy before dinner? B: No, I
a) should b) shouldn't c) maybe d) can't
- 3 You are sick. You go to school today.
a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) can
- 4 Your friend is sad. You make him happy.
a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) can
- 5 The room is very messy. You clean it.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) should
- 6 You are hungry. You should something healthy.
a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
- 7 You are tired. You stay up very late.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must
- 8 Your hands are dirty. You wash them before eating.
a) shouldn't b) should c) can d) may
- 9 The weather is very cold. You should a warm coat.
a) wears b) wore c) wearing d) wear
- 10 A: you wash your hands before eating? B: Yes, I should.
a) Should b) Have c) Are d) Must

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You (shouldn't) eat fruits and vegetables every day.
- 2 Ali (should) run in the classroom.
- 3 We should (brushed) our teeth twice a day.
- 4 Should I (wears) sunscreen before going outside?
- 5 Should Sarah (drank) cold water after running?
- 6 You (should) play with sharp objects.
- 7 Omar should (listens) carefully to the teacher.
- 8 Should you (helping) your parents at home?
- 9 We (shouldn't) sleep early at night.
- 10 A: Should I take my coat today if it's cold? B: Yes, you (shouldn't).

Unit 6



Story Corner

The Lost Kite

Unit 6

village	قرية	near the edge of	بالقرب من حافة / أطراف
dusty	مغبر	hold	بمسك
sway	يتمايل	get tired	يصبح متعباً / مرهقاً
rise	يرتفع	own	يمتلك
tightly	بإحكام / بقوة	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
without warning	دون سابق إنذار / فجأة	slip	ينزلق
move down	يتحرك للأسفل	rush	يندفع / يسرع
drift	ينجرف / يتعد	tears	دموع
wooden	خشبي	shoulder	كتف
vines	كروم / نباتات متسلقة	faded	باهت / فقد لونه
knock gently	يطرق برفق	after a moment	بعد لحظة
step forward	يتقدم إلى الأمام	anxiously	بقلق / بترقب
creak	يُصرّ / يصدر صوتاً خفيفاً عند الفتح	chuckle	يضحك ضحكة خفيفة
untangle	يفكّ / يحزّر	beard	لحية
fetch	يجلب / يحضر	tiles	البلاط
hug	يعانق / يحتضن	soar	يرتفع عالياً / يحلق
glow	يلمع	adventure	مغامرة
dates	بلح	field	حقل
unrolled the string	فك الخيط	bridge	جسر / كوبري
mud-brick building	مبنى من الطوب الطيني		



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar lived in a quiet
a) city b) village c) desert d) farm
- 2 Sami's new kite was
a) blue b) red c) yellow d) green
- 3 Omar carried a basket of sweet
a) apples b) biscuits c) dates d) oranges
- 4 The kite flew away when a strong blew.
a) rain b) wind c) storm d) bird
- 5 The kite landed on the of an old house.
a) door b) window c) roof d) garden
- 6 The old man had a white
a) hat b) beard c) coat d) stick
- 7 The old man used a to get the kite.
a) stick b) rope c) ladder d) net
- 8 Sami felt when he got his kite back.
a) angry b) sad c) happy d) bored
- 9 The old man said that kindness makes the world
a) bigger b) brighter c) richer d) quieter
- 10 The second time, Sami held the string
a) tightly b) loosely c) carelessly d) slowly

2 Read and complete with one word from the box:

creaked – swayed – drifted – nervous – soaring

- 1 moved slowly through the air (.....)
- 2 walked unsteadily (.....)
- 3 made a sharp sound (.....)
- 4 feeling worried or afraid (.....)
- 5 flying high in the air (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

1 Where did Omar live?

.....

2 What was the color of Sami's kite?

.....

3 What did Omar carry in the basket?

.....

4 Where did the kite land?

.....

5 Who helped the boys get the kite back?

.....

6 What did the children in the village do while playing?

.....

7 How did Sami feel when his kite flew away?

.....

8 What did the old man tell the boys about kindness?

.....

4 Put these events in the correct order:

- ☐ The old man climbed the ladder and got the kite.
- ☐ The kite flew away and landed on a roof.
- ☐ Omar and Sami went to the field with a kite and dates.
- ☐ The boys thanked the man and flew the kite again.
- ☐ A strong wind blew, and Sami lost the string.

5 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- | | |
|--|---------|
| 1 The village was noisy and crowded. | () |
| 2 Sami's kite was blue. | () |
| 3 The old man was kind and helpful. | () |
| 4 The boys crossed a large metal bridge. | () |
| 5 Sami held the string tightly the second time he flew the kite. | () |



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة			
Present		Past	
			Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	taste يتذوق
decorate	يُزين	decorated	start يبدأ
help	يساعد	helped	share يشارك
promise	يُعد	promised	need يحتاج
compare	يقارن	compared	work يعمل
listen	يستمع	listened	dance يرقص
ask	يسأل	asked	rain يمطر
walk	يمشي	walked	change يُغيّر
climb	يتسلق	climbed	realize يدرك
talk	يتحدث	talked	glow يتوهّج
visit	يزور	visited	carry يحمل
unroll	يفكّ (شيء ملفوف)	unrolled	soar يحلق
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	remind يذكرّ
waste	يضيع	wasted	wash يغسل
slip	ينزلق	slipped	check يتحقق / يفحص
drift	ينجرف	drifted	stay يبقى
land	يهبط	landed	hope يأمل
whisper	يهمس	whispered	wrap يلفّ
knock	يطرق	knocked	stop يتوقف
creak	يصدر صريرًا	creaked	pack يحزم
step	يخطو	stepped	like يحب
nod	يوميّ	noded	smile يتسم
wave	يلوح	waved	explain يشرح
chuckle	يضحك ضحكة خفيفة	chuckled	look ينظر
shout	يصرخ	shouted	boil يغلي
cheer	يَهتِف بحماس	cheered	arrange يرتب
clap	يصقّق	clapped	apply يطبق
recycle	يعيد التدوير	recycled	farm يزرع

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة					
Present		Past	Present		Past
am / is / are	يكون	was / were	cut	يقطع	cut
have	يملك	had	begin	يبدأ	began
go	يذهب	went	fly	يطير	flew
take	يأخذ	took	do	يفعل	did
come	يأتي	came	can	يستطيع	could
put	يضع	put	eat	يأكل	ate
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	find	يجد	found
buy	يشترى	bought	get	يحصل على	got
sing	يغنى	sang	write	يكتب	wrote
break	يكسر	broke	sink	يغرق	sank
give	يعطى	gave	become	يصبح	became
meet	يقابل	met	hang	يعلق	hung
bring	يحضر	brought	rise	يرتفع	rose
run	يركض	ran	leave	يغادر	left
sleep	ينام	slept	wear	يرتدى	wore
say	يقول	said	read	يقرأ	read
know	يعرف / يعلم	knew	win	يفوز	won
tell	يخبر	told	sit	يجلس	sat
see	يرى	saw	hold	يمسك	held

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Youssef went to the Nile River with his uncle. ()
- 2 Youssef helped his grandfather sail the boat. ()
- 3 Youssef saw fishermen catching fish with their nets. ()
- 4 The day was boring and noisy. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 The teacher asked us to the rules at school.
a) forget b) apply c) play d) ignore
- 2 is a famous place in Sinai.
a) Oyoun Mousa b) Alex c) Luxor d) Giza
- 3 People should the amount of water and energy they use to save the environment.
a) reduce b) increase c) destroy d) ignore
- 4 Yesterday, I to the market to buy some vegetables.
a) walk b) walked c) walking d) walks
- 5 There isn't juice left.
a) many b) a few c) much d) some
- 6 You be kind to your friends.
a) shouldn't b) should c) did d) mustn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

seagull – desert – ships – Corniche – breeze

People enjoy visiting places near the sea because they are peaceful and beautiful. Last weekend, my family and I walked along the (1)..... in Port Said. We felt the cool (2)..... and watched (3)..... moving through the Suez Canal. While we sat by the water, a (4)..... flew above us, searching for food. It was a calm and wonderful day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Natural wonders are amazing places created by nature, not by people. They show us how beautiful our planet is. One natural wonder in Egypt is the Blue Hole in Dahab. It has deep blue water and many colorful fish living in it. Another natural wonder is Oyoum Mousa, where fresh water springs flow in the desert. People visit these places to enjoy the quiet views, learn about nature, and take wonderful photos. Natural wonders **remind** us to protect our environment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Natural wonders are places created by
 a) people b) nature c) animals d) robots
- 2 When you "remind" someone, you help them to something.
 a) read b) write c) remember d) speak

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where do fresh water springs flow?
- 4 Why do many people visit natural wonders?
- 5 What do natural wonders remind us to do?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Adel likes football, (and) he doesn't like tennis.
- 2 The weather is hot. You (shouldn't) drink more water.
- 3 We drank (a) milk for breakfast.
- 4 She (eats) an apple yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 i played with my friends yesterday
- 2 what did you do first

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Different places in the environment"

oasis – village – city

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. ()
- 2 They saw tall trees, birds, and colorful flowers. ()
- 3 The farmer told them a story about the river. ()
- 4 They bought fresh fruit from the market. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 The water from the springs is very
a) hot b) dirty c) salty d) fresh
- 2 We bought a carton of for breakfast.
a) milk b) water c) juice d) coffee
- 3 To protect nature, we should materials such as glass, paper, and plastic.
a) recycle b) cut c) buy d) ignore
- 4 She a new dress for the party last week.
a) buy b) buys c) bought d) buying
- 5 The music was very
a) loud b) loudly c) loudest d) louder
- 6 You sleep early before school.
a) shouldn't b) should c) can't d) are

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

riverbank – sunny – fisherman – fresh – sail

Many people enjoy spending time by the river, watching nature and relaxing. A (1)..... sat in his small boat on the calm water. He used his oars to (2)..... slowly and look for fish. On the (3)....., children waved to him and played happily. The fisherman smiled as he sailed past them, enjoying the (4)..... air and peaceful view.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, I visited my grandparents in the village. The weather was sunny and warm. The village was quiet and peaceful. I saw green trees, farms, and animals. I helped my grandfather in the garden. I felt happy and **relaxed**. It was a lovely day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) village b) city c) home d) park
- 2 If you feel **relaxed**, you are not
 a) happy b) worried c) peaceful d) lovely

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who did the writer visit in the village?
- 4 How was the weather in the village?
- 5 How did the writer feel?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Last week, they (**walk**) in the forest.
- 2 I (**do not**) go to school yesterday.
- 3 The place is very (**crowd**). It's full of people.
- 4 You (**shouldn't**) eat healthy food.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 who placed the bread slices on the counter
- 2 her mother picked some cheese

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

"Family gathering"

exchange gifts – perform music – play a game

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Amr went to the Nile River with his grandfather. ()
- 2 They sailed in a big ship. ()
- 3 Amr saw fishermen, farmers, and palm trees. ()
- 4 They ate food and listened to stories under a tree. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 It was an celebration that we will always remember.
a) unforgettable b) good c) light d) bad
- 2 Many tourists go in the Red Sea to see colorful fish.
a) running b) scuba diving c) drawing d) shopping
- 3 How time do we have?
a) many b) a few c) much d) some
- 4 I the answer to the question, but nobody listened.
a) know b) knew c) knowing d) knows
- 5 She didn't come to school she was sick.
a) so b) because c) but d) or
- 6 If we do not take care of the, future generations will face serious problems.
a) planet b) plane c) building d) animal

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

decorated – cake – clapped – giveaways – balloons

Last Friday, our class went hiking in the mountains. The weather was cool and everyone felt excited. When we reached the top, we found a small place (1)..... with colorful flags and (2)..... for a school celebration. Our teacher gave us little (3)....., like stickers and keychains, to remember the trip. At the end, we all (4)..... for our great teamwork and enjoyed the beautiful view together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Omar and Kareem sat together in the garden after school. Omar held his tablet. "I like to **chat** with my friends online," he said. "Sometimes we talk for fun, and sometimes about homework." Kareem nodded. "I feel happy when we share pictures and stories. It's better than feeling sad or lonely."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 If you "**chat**" online with your friends, you them using the internet.
a) fight with b) talk to c) take photos of d) visit
- 2 Kareem feels happy when they pictures and stories.
a) choose b) listen c) play d) share

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Omar hold?
- 4 When does Omar feel happy?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 They (**travel**) to Alexandria last year.
- 2 He was sick, (**because**) he didn't go to school two days ago.
- 3 Children (**should**) play near the street.
- 4 We (**not/go**) to the beach last summer.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what games did they play
- 2 I played a game of chess with kareem

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Go Green"

reuse – plastic – pollution

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Zein celebrated his birthday at school. ()
- 2 He woke up excited in the morning. ()
- 3 Zein and his sister decorated the living room ()
- 4 They arranged snacks and a small cake. ()



Reading

3

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hamza placed the bread slices on the
a) cup b) bin c) counter d) water
- 2 Oyoun Mousa is a in Egypt.
a) hospital b) natural wonder c) factory d) school
- 3 We should always try to things like paper and plastic instead of throwing them away.
a) throw b) reuse c) eat d) wash
- 4 Ali his homework last night.
a) does b) do c) did d) doing
- 5 We a wonderful time at the party.
a) have b) has c) had d) having
- 6 He likes football, he prefers basketball.
a) so b) because c) but d) and

2

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bin – clean – delicious – lettuce – counter

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. She washed her hands and put bread on the (1)..... . Reem washed the (2)..... while her mother prepared the cheese and tomatoes. Her mother taught her about being (3)..... while cooking. Reem carefully made the sandwiches and felt proud when she finished. Her mother smiled and said, "Let's call the family for lunch!" Reem was happy to help and enjoyed making a (4)..... meal.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Recycling is very important because it helps protect our planet. When we recycle paper, plastic, and metal, we use less new materials and **reduce** waste. This keeps our environment clean and saves energy. Recycling also helps protect animals and nature from pollution. Everyone can help by sorting trash, reusing things like bottles and bags, and throwing waste in the correct bin. When we recycle, we make our world cleaner and safer for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Recycling helps protect our
a) toys b) food c) planet d) games
- 2 If we "**reduce**" waste, this means that the waste is
a) more b) less c) nice d) correct

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What materials can we recycle?
- 4 How does recycling help nature?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The weather is cold. You (**should**) wear shorts.
- 2 Farida (**does not**) play with her friends last week.
- 3 Did you (**went**) to school yesterday?
- 4 We stayed at home (**nor**) it was too hot to go out.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what does recycling mean
- 2 our teacher was very happy

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Saving resources"

gas – electricity – water

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live. ()
- 2 Plants can grow without sunlight. ()
- 3 We can help nature by planting trees and flowers. ()
- 4 Caring for animals and plants makes the world better. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 People in the desert live in
a) schools b) gardens c) tents d) homes
- 2 We visit people to make them feel happy.
a) elderly b) hungry c) playful d) sporty
- 3 Everyone can help the Earth by trying to in their daily life.
a) go green b) sleep c) play d) drive
- 4 We stayed home it was raining heavily.
a) because b) and c) but d) so
- 5 You listen to your teachers carefully.
a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) are
- 6 My friend me a message last night.
a) send b) sends c) sent d) sending

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

palm trees – village – across – water – riverbank

Last weekend, I went to the village with my family. We walked by the (1) and saw a fisherman in his boat. He wanted to sail (2) the river. There were many (3), near the water. The air was fresh, and the place was very beautiful. I loved my visit to the (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last Friday was a special day at our school called "A Day of Helping Others." All the students worked together to do kind things. Some students collected food for poor families, while others packed clothes for children in need. A group of students cleaned the school garden and watered the plants. We also visited **elderly** people in our neighborhood and gave them fruit and small gifts. Everyone felt happy because helping others makes our community better and shows kindness. It was a wonderful day full of teamwork and care.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Students collected for poor families.
a) toys b) food c) books d) games
- 2 "Elderly" people are people.
a) old b) young c) poor d) hungry

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they give to the elderly people?
- 4 Why did everyone feel happy at the end of the day?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 I'm thirsty. Can I have (a) water, please?
- 2 We don't burn plastic, (and) do we throw it on the ground.
- 3 I bought a (piece of) milk from the store.
- 4 Asmaa (does not) visit his friends last week.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what did Omar do on his tablet
- 2 he put candles on a cake for the party

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Al-Azhar Park"

picnic – share – food

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Our school went to Al Azhar Park.
- 2 We ate only chocolate.
- 3 We put milk and juice in a cooler.
- 4 Each student got bread with jam.

()
()
()
()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 For breakfast, I like a of bread with butter.
a) piece b) bar c) slice d) carton
- 2 Bananas, apples, and are healthy fruits.
a) cucumbers b) peaches c) carrots d) bread
- 3 Factories produce smoke that causes, which is harmful to humans and animals.
a) pollution b) flowers c) water d) music
- 4 I like to read books watch educational videos.
a) because b) and c) but d) so
- 5 How information do you need?
a) many b) a few c) much d) some
- 6 She has a dress.
a) beauty b) beautiful c) beautifully d) beauties

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hide-and-seek – balloons – exchange – perform – special

During our family celebration, we (1)..... gifts and everyone feels happy. Then, we play a game like (2)..... in the garden. Later, we eat (3)..... food and enjoy the meal together. At the end, some family members (4)..... music, and we all have fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

It is Sunday morning. Ali and his family are in the kitchen. Ali is very hungry. His mother gives him a slice of bread and a piece of cheese. His sister, Sara, is drinking a carton of milk. Their father is drinking a bottle of orange juice and reading the newspaper. After breakfast, Ali eats a bar of chocolate and shares a pack of biscuits with Sara. They are all happy and ready for a fun day!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 It is morning.
a) Friday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Monday
- 2 Ali and his family are in the
a) garden b) kitchen c) school d) bedroom

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Ali eat for breakfast?
- 4 How do they feel at the end?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We (do) our homework yesterday.
- 2 Students (should) stay up late on school days.
- 3 They go to the club (so) play football.
- 4 Aya (swim) at the beach last week.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Did malek play football yesterday
- 2 birds were flying over the water

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

“A trip to the mountains”

peaceful – paths – distance

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Khalid went to the park with a red kite. ()
- 2 The kite fell to the ground. ()
- 3 Khalid tried to run after the kite. ()
- 4 Khalid decided to make a new kite the next year. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 We should plastic bottles instead of throwing them away.
a) cut b) reuse c) break d) lose
- 2 We should put in the bin. We want to clean up the room.
a) pens b) water c) leaves d) litter
- 3 When shopping, it is better to carry a instead of using plastic bags.
a) basket b) tote bag c) backpack d) box
- 4 I bought milk from the supermarket.
a) carton b) two c) much d) many
- 5 They happy when they won the game.
a) is b) are c) were d) was
- 6 We visited the museum saw ancient statues.
a) but b) so c) and d) because

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hang up – everyone – beautiful – ribbons – dirty

Everyone was cheerful as they prepared for the party. They used colorful (1)..... and bright decorations to make the room look (2)..... . Some students worked together to (3)..... balloons all around the walls. When they finished, the place looked amazing and (4)..... felt happy and excited.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Fishermen go to the sea early in the morning. They take their small boats and fishing nets. The **water is calm**, and the sky is clear. They wait patiently for the fish to come. After some time, they pull the nets and see many fish inside. The fishermen feel happy and proud. They return home with smiles on their faces. Then, they clean the fish and prepare them for selling in the market. Children in the village wave to them when they come back. In the evening, the fishermen fix their nets, rest, and get ready for a new day at sea.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The fishermen go to the sea in the morning.
a) late b) early c) slowly d) rarely
- 2 If the "**water is calm**", this means that the water is
a) noisy b) peaceful c) dangerous d) scary

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the fishermen take with them?
- 4 Where do the fishermen take the fish after catching them?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Malek (**takes**) an English exam last week.
- 2 She is happy (**and**) she helped her mother cook.
- 3 The (**rude**) boy helped his friend carry the heavy bag.
- 4 He (**shouldn't**) sleep early because he has an exam tomorrow.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 hussein grows flowers in his garden
- 2 how can we help sea animals live safely

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"A birthday celebration"

birthday – prepared – wrapped

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Zein's birthday party was at school. ()
- 2 His friends brought gifts and balloons. ()
- 3 Zein blew out the candles on a chocolate cake. ()
- 4 It was a wonderful and special day for Zein. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 People in the desert traveled on camels, and used for water.
a) tea b) juice c) oil d) wells
- 2 We should help people.
a) poor b) rich c) big d) bad
- 3 Please don't throw on the street; it makes the city dirty.
a) litter b) food c) water d) stones
- 4 We ate slices of pizza at lunch.
a) a b) any c) much d) many
- 5 There isn't sugar in my coffee.
a) many b) a few c) much d) some
- 6 My dad a new car last month.
a) drive b) drives c) drove d) driving

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

tent – steps – promised – poor – elderly

Helping others is a wonderful way to make people happy and make the world better. Kareem helped an old man climb the (1)..... to his home, and Fatma gave fruits to some (2)..... people who were smiling happily. After delivering everything, they sat and talked with the (3)..... to learn about their needs. It was hard work, but Kareem and Fatma enjoyed the day and (4)..... to do it again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last weekend, Amr and Salma enjoyed a wonderful family **gathering**. They sat together, talked, and listened to Amr's uncle play music on his oud. Everyone clapped and had fun playing games. Amr played chess with Kareem, while Salma played hide-and-seek with her cousins. The food was delicious—grilled chicken, and cake. Salma's mother and grandmother cooked the chicken, and Amr brought fruit salad.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A "**gathering**" means
 a) a party b) lots of people c) music d) special food
- 2 Everyone clapped and had playing games.
 a) rest b) time c) fun d) boring

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did the party happen?
- 4 Who did Amr play chess with?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 (Do) Ali eat pizza two days ago?
- 2 I read a lot of history books (so) I want to learn more about the past.
- 3 We should (helps) each other at school.
- 4 She bought (a) bananas from the market.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 They went to the zoo last friday
- 2 why do the sea animals eat plastic

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"Our neighborhood"

families – poor – help

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The school playground looked beautiful. ()
- 2 There were colorful balloons and shiny lights. ()
- 3 The students wore their usual clothes. ()
- 4 Everyone felt bored. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 My mother chose a of chocolate.
a) slice b) carton c) bottle d) bar
- 2 The sports day made all the students cheer and clap.
a) boring b) exciting c) cold d) bad
- 3 Always throw trash in the to keep your surroundings clean.
a) bin b) bag c) cupboard d) shelf
- 4 There isn't sugar in the bowl.
a) two b) many c) much d) few
- 5 The movie was very
a) excite b) exciting c) excited d) excites
- 6 You go to bed late because you have to wake up early.
a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) haven't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

candles – hung – fireworks – giveaways – cheerful

It was Sarah's birthday, and everyone helped to decorate the living room. They (1)..... shiny ribbons and lit (2)..... on the big cake. The room looked bright and (3)..... . Sarah's mother wrapped the (4)..... in colorful paper for the guests. When everything was ready, the house looked beautiful and full of joy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Emad enjoys using different apps on his tablet. Some apps are fun, and some help him learn new things. Yesterday, he watched pictures and played an **educational** game. It was really interesting! Technology is helpful and exciting when we use it safely. I like to learn, play, and explore something new every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Emad enjoys using different apps on his
a) laptop b) tablet c) phone d) smartphone
- 2 If a game is "**educational**", it helps us
a) eat b) sleep c) learn d) cook

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Emad do yesterday?
- 4 When is technology helpful?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Should we (**stayed**) indoors if it's stormy?
- 2 We visited our grandparents (**next**) summer.
- 3 Aya went to the hospital because she is (**healthy**).
- 4 Adel (**not cry**) when he fell down.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what do the fishermen use to catch fish
- 2 mazin bought a carton of milk for tea

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"A traditional life"

desert – tents – water springs

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ali helped his father in the kitchen. ()
- 2 He washed his hands before starting. ()
- 3 Ali placed the bread slices on the table. ()
- 4 He felt happy and excited at the end. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 Helping others makes us feel
a) unhappy b) happily c) happy d) happiness
- 2 You shouldn't touch the because they are living sea animals.
a) waves b) boats c) corals d) rocks
- 3 We should respect our and take care of the places around us.
a) surroundings b) friends c) pets d) house
- 4 The children were very after the fun party.
a) cheerful b) party c) noise d) play
- 5 We waste water.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can
- 6 He fell off his bike he wasn't careful.
a) but b) because c) so d) and

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

brought – garden – cucumbers – fresh – leftovers

On Saturday, our school had a picnic. We went to the (1) near our neighborhood. Families (2) food to share. We had fruits and vegetables like tomatoes, bananas, and (3) We drank milk and orange juice. After eating, we packed the (4) for poor people. Everyone was happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

People live in different environments. Some people live in the city. The city is very busy and has many cars, stores, and tall buildings. In the village, life is calm. There are green farmers, animals, and fresh air. Farmers raise animals and grow food. In the desert, life is different. It is very hot and dry. There is a lot of sand, and few plants. People may live in tents or small houses.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) forest b) sand c) environments d) shops
- 2 It is very hot in the
 a) desert b) village c) city d) forest

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where do people live in the city?
- 4 What do people do in the village?
- 5 What is the weather like in the desert?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 (Are) you play computer games last night?
- 2 I don't like tea, (or) do I drink coffee.
- 3 Amira (didn't) at school this morning.
- 4 You should (listened) to your parents.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how is the weather today
- 2 i live in a peaceful village

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"A desert trip"

camels – sunny weather – tents

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Salma spent her mid-year vacation in Alex. ()
- 2 She went scuba diving and saw starfish. ()
- 3 She only stayed at the hotel and didn't go outside. ()
- 4 Salma enjoyed hiking and horseback riding. ()



Reading

3

- 1 Ali wants to try one day because he likes horses.
a) cooking b) horseback riding
c) painting d) playing football
- 2 We crossed the river by a to reach the island.
a) ferry b) car c) plane d) bike
- 3 Natural such as water and oil can run out if we are not careful.
a) houses b) animals c) cars d) resources
- 4 You eat too much chocolate; it's bad for your teeth.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can d) must
- 5 He doesn't like milk does he like yogurt.
a) or b) so c) nor d) but
- 6 They their grandmother last weekend.
a) visit b) visits c) visited d) visiting

2

socializing – cousins – balloons – playground – game

Last weekend was an unforgettable day. My (1)..... came to visit us, and we had so much fun together. We started to play a (2)..... in the garden and decorated the place with colorful (3)..... . We ate delicious stuffed grape leaves. I love (4)..... with friends and family. It was a perfect day!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Every morning, Ahmed goes to the market to buy food for his family. He buys a kilo of apples, some bread, and a bottle of orange juice. The market is always busy, with sellers calling out to people to buy their products. Ahmed also **picks up** some food packages to share with his neighbors. After shopping, he walks home happily, carrying the fresh food and thinking about the delicious breakfast his mother will make.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The verb "**picks up**" means
 a) eats b) collects c) sells d) tastes
- 2 He buys a of apples.
 a) bag b) kilo c) box d) bottle

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are the sellers doing at the market?
- 4 How does Ahmed feel after shopping?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 They (**travel**) to Alexandria last weekend.
- 2 She (**shouldn't**) wash her hands before eating.
- 3 The children (**don't**) play in the park yesterday.
- 4 My grandmother is very (**unkind**); she always helps everyone.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 when should we go to bed
- 2 Farida and asmaa go to school by bike

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"My birthday party"

celebrate – decorate – giveaways

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Youssef went to the Nile River with his grandfather. ()
- 2 They sailed on a fast and rough river. ()
- 3 Youssef saw fishermen, farmers, and palm trees. ()
- 4 Youssef didn't enjoy the trip. ()



Reading

3

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My teacher us to bring our books tomorrow.
a) forgot b) reminded c) ran d) cooked
- 2 We spread on the bread before putting cheese on top.
a) milk b) butter c) jam d) salt
- 3 If we use resources wisely, they will not so quickly.
a) run out b) increase c) appear d) save
- 4 We visit the Pyramids when we are in Egypt.
a) should b) shouldn't c) are d) didn't
- 5 Would you like pizza pasta for lunch?
a) or b) nor c) but d) so
- 6 Did Sama to her school last week?
a) went b) going c) go d) goes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

tents – neighbors – desert – adapted – wells

A traveler came to a village near a forest. The (1)..... were kind and friendly. He knew that people get water from (2)..... . Some families slept in (3)..... when the weather was nice. The traveler saw how the people (4)..... to their home and lived happily together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last Saturday was my friend Sarah's birthday, and it was an amazing day! She invited all her friends to her house for a fun party. The room was full of colorful balloons, lights, and music. We played exciting games and danced together. Sarah's mom made a delicious chocolate cake, and everyone sang "Happy Birthday." We gave Sarah lovely presents, and she smiled all day. It was truly a special and unforgettable birthday!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The party was at house.
a) my b) the teacher's c) Sarah's d) Ahmed's
- 2 The room was full of balloons.
a) colorful b) black c) white d) golden

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the children do at the party?
- 4 What did everyone give to Sarah?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Leen (reads) a new storybook last night.
- 2 The story is very (boring). Everyone likes it.
- 3 We finished our homework, (because) we could watch a movie.
- 4 We should (brushed) our teeth twice a day.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Did Hamza and malek visit their grandparents
- 2 we felt proud of our teamwork and creativity

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"A day in the desert"

bedouins – traditional life – tents

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Noura prepared for a picnic with her father. ()
- 2 They packed milk, chocolate, and biscuits. ()
- 3 They also packed bread, cheese, and apples. ()
- 4 Noura felt unhappy while helping her mother. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 My mom goes every Friday to buy food.
a) shopping b) cooking c) swimming d) reading
- 2 We had a big at my grandfather's house last Friday.
a) school day b) picnic
c) football match d) family gathering
- 3 We must use water and electricity to avoid wasting them.
a) wisely b) carelessly c) daily d) quickly
- 4 He can sing well, he can't play the guitar.
a) so b) because c) but d) and
- 5 She helped her mother she is a kind girl.
a) so b) because c) but d) or
- 6 What you buy yesterday?
a) do b) does c) did d) doing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

bottle – package – pack – milk – cheese

Yesterday, I bought some items from the supermarket. I got a (1)..... of biscuits for my afternoon snack. I also picked up a (2)..... of juice to drink with my lunch. For breakfast tomorrow, I bought a slice of bread and a piece of (3)..... to make a delicious sandwich. All these items were in one food (4)....., ready to enjoy!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last week, the weather was very strange! On Monday, it was sunny and hot, so my family went on a picnic. The next day, it became cloudy and windy, and we stayed at home. On Wednesday, it started raining, and my little brother played with his umbrella. On Thursday, there was a stormy night with thunder and lightning! Finally, on Friday, it was cold but beautiful. We watched the weather forecast on TV every morning to plan our week.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The weather on Monday was
 a) rainy b) sunny c) stormy d) cloudy
- 2 The family watched the every morning.
 a) movie b) news c) forecast d) show

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the family do on a sunny day?
- 4 Why did the little boy have an umbrella with him?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 (Do) they play football in the park yesterday?
- 2 Do you want milk (because) juice with your breakfast?
- 3 The turtle is (fast); it moves slowly.
- 4 We (shouldn't) sleep early at night.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 hadeer visited the river and took some photos
- 2 what did the farmer tell them about

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

“Traveling around Egypt”

village – desert – buildings

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Some people live in big villages with tall buildings. ()
- 2 The air is dirty in small villages near a river. ()
- 3 The desert is hot and dry, but it has its own beauty. ()
- 4 We don't need to protect the environment. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 We must protect the by keeping the air and water clean.
a) school b) environment c) bedroom d) house
- 2 We had a big for my sister's birthday.
a) celebration b) lesson c) meeting d) journey
- 3 It was a bright and day, perfect for a picnic.
a) rainy b) sunny c) cloudy d) stormy
- 4 You study for your exam if you want to do well.
a) shouldn't b) can't c) should d) were
- 5 I a delicious cake last night.
a) make b) makes c) made d) making
- 6 I went to the hospital, I was very sick.
a) so b) because c) but d) and

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

oasis – forest – river – environment – city

There are many different places in our environment. In the (1)....., there are tall buildings and busy streets. In the desert, you can find an (2)..... with water and palm trees. A (3)..... flows near a quiet village, and a (4)..... that is full of green trees and animals. Each place is special in its own way.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Omar likes using the computer in the evening. He uses social media to chat and socialize with friends from school. Sometimes, he sends a message to his teacher to ask about homework. Before he can log in, he always types his password carefully. For his science project, he uses the internet to do research and find new information. Omar knows that using technology is useful, but he also takes breaks to rest his eyes and spend time with his family.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar uses the internet to
a) play football b) do research c) watch TV d) eat dinner
- 2 Before logging in, Omar types his
a) email b) name c) password d) photo

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why does Omar send a message to his teacher?
- 4 What does Omar do to rest his eyes?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Did you (went) to school yesterday?
- 2 You can read a book (because) watch TV before bed.
- 3 The weather is (hot); I need a jacket.
- 4 You (shouldn't) eat fruits and vegetables every day.

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 do you like rainy days
- 2 gas helps us cook and stay warm

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

“My favorite holiday”

celebrate – special – perform

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 On Friday, the family celebrates a special day. ()
- 2 They only stay at home and do not invite anyone. ()
- 3 There is delicious food, and there are fun games for children. ()
- 4 The cousins perform a short song. ()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3

- 1 Can I have a of cake, please?
a) bottle b) spoon c) cup d) piece
- 2 The juice and cups were ready on the for breakfast.
a) bed b) counter c) floor d) drawer
- 3 We the living room with colorful balloons.
a) wrapped b) decorated c) celebrated d) cleaned
- 4 We talk loudly in the library.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can
- 5 Mona bought apples oranges from the market.
a) but b) or c) nor d) and
- 6 Adam watch TV yesterday.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) doing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

special – music – exchange – game – friends

Festivals are special days for everyone. People like to perform (1)..... and dance happily. They often eat (2)..... food with their families and socialize with (3)..... during the celebration. At the end of the day, they (4)..... gifts to show love and joy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

Last month, we had a big family party to celebrate my grandparents' anniversary. Everyone came together to socialize with friends and relatives. The garden looked beautiful with balloons and lights. There was special food like rice, chicken, and cake. We also played a fun game with my cousins. My sister and I performed a short song for our grandparents, and they were so happy. After that, we gave them gifts and took many photos. It was a wonderful day, and everyone enjoyed it.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The family celebrated their grandparents'
a) birthday b) anniversary c) graduation d) trip
- 2 The children performed a for their grandparents.
a) song b) poem c) story d) game

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the family eat at the party?
- 4 What did the children give to their grandparents?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The Fun Day was very (excite).
- 2 My teacher is kind and (help).
- 3 We didn't (had) lunch at a restaurant.
- 4 A: Should I take my coat today if it's cold? B: Yes, you (did).

6 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how can we use less paper
- 2 I had a wonderful time celebrating labor day.

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences (25 words) using the words below:

7

"My home"

family – socialize – play games

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 There are many buildings and cars in the (city – desert – forest).
- 2 We can find water and trees in a/an (desert – forest – oasis).
- 3 A (lake – pond – river) flows gently through the forest.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

milk – bottle – bar – biscuits

Ali : I'm going to the supermarket. Do you want anything?

Mona : Yes, please! Can you get me a (1)..... of chocolate? I want something sweet.

Ali : Sure. Do you also need a carton of (2)..... for breakfast?

Mona : Yes, that's a good idea. And maybe a (3)..... of juice to drink.

Ali : Okay! I'll also buy a pack of (4)..... for snack.



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 For (breakfast – lunch – dessert), we had ice cream and fruit salad.
- 2 The city is very (quiet – busy – kind) during the day with many cars and people.
- 3 They (not eat – didn't eat – doesn't eat) any fruits yesterday.
- 4 Farmers grow many (crops – clouds – coins) like rice, wheat, and corn.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

1 You should helped your friends when they need you. (.....)

2 We should throw rubbish on the ground. (.....)

3 Did you cleaned your room yesterday? (.....)

4 You should always cross the road without looking. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

People enjoy spending time outdoors in many different ways. Some people like hiking in the mountains or camping under the stars. Others enjoy swimming in the sea or playing volleyball on the beach. Children often play in the park, ride their bikes, or go skating. Outdoor activities help us stay active, healthy, and happy. They also let us enjoy nature and spend time with our families and friends.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 People can go hiking in the mountains. (.....)
- 2 Outdoor activities make people tired and sad. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 People enjoy swimming (in the house – in the sea – in the kitchen).
- 4 Children like to (ride bikes – watch TV – sleep all day).
- 5 Outdoor activities help us stay (lazy – hungry – healthy).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

8

"My favorite place"

Port Said – ferry – park – excited

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The weather was (rainy – sunny – snowy).
- 2 They went to the (field – shop – school) near the river.
- 3 There were many (cars – buildings – palm trees).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

tasty – hide-and-seek – clapped – gathering

Salma: Hi Amr! Did you enjoy the family (1).....?

Amr : Yes! We listened to my uncle play music, and everyone (2).....

Salma: I played (3)..... with my cousins.

Amr : The food was (4)....., and I brought fruit salad.

Salma: That sounds fun!



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 People drink a (bottle – bar – slice) of juice with breakfast.
- 2 The (forest – city – desert) has many tall trees and animals.
- 3 Should we (say – says – said) sorry when we make a mistake?
- 4 We went to bed early (and – or – because) we were tired.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 She should eating vegetables. (.....)
- 2 I went to the market, but I bought some vegetables. (.....)
- 3 Teachers shouldn't be kind to their students. (.....)
- 4 Farida sleeps early last night. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

The weather can be different every day. Sometimes it is sunny and hot, and people go outside to play or have picnics. On cloudy or windy days, the sky looks gray, and trees move with the wind. When it is rainy, people use umbrellas and wear boots. In stormy weather, there is thunder and lightning. During winter, it can be cold and snowy, and children love to build snowmen. The weather changes, but every kind of weather can be fun in its own way.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 People go outside to play when it is sunny and hot. (.....)
- 2 On windy days, the trees do not move. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 People use umbrellas when it is (sunny – snowy – rainy).
- 4 Children build snowmen when it is (snowy – windy – hot).
- 5 The sky looks gray on (cloudy – sunny – warm) days.



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

8

"My family gathering"

music – play games – cousins – special food

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 My family met at the (school – grandparents' house – park).
- 2 My (friends – cousins – teachers) came to the gathering.
- 3 Everyone was (sad – happy – angry).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

bedouins – Oyoun Mousa – springs – wonder

Hamza : Hi Farida! Have you been to (1).....?

Farida : Yes! It's beautiful with fresh (2)..... and palm trees.

Hamza : Did you meet the (3)..... there?

Farida : Yes, and I learned about their life.

Hamza : I want to visit it too because it's a natural (4)..... .

Farida : You'll love it! It's calm and full of history.



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 A/An (oasis – mountain – river) is a place with water and trees in the desert.
- 2 You shouldn't touch the (rock – starfish – plate) because it is a living sea animal.
- 3 You (are – should – shouldn't) sleep early.
- 4 The movie was (boring – amazing – long); I really loved it!

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 She should drank milk every day. (.....)
- 2 They don't go to school yesterday. (.....)
- 3 She slept well and she felt tired. (.....)
- 4 Did you seen the movie yesterday? (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

During celebrations, people like to spend time with their family and friends. They exchange gifts, eat special food, and sometimes perform music or play a game together. Children enjoy socializing with their friends and having fun. Celebrations help people feel happy and spend time with the people they love.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 People exchange gifts during celebrations. (.....)
- 2 Children do not like to socialize with friends. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 People sometimes (perform music – sleep – read books) at celebrations.
- 4 Children like to (play a game – wash dishes – clean the house) with their friends.
- 5 During celebrations, people (eat special food – throw rubbish – go to school).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

8

"My birthday party"

decorate – fireworks – balloons – gifts

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 People exchange (books – gifts – toys) with family and friends.
- 2 Some people (sleep – perform music – study) at celebrations.
- 3 People (eat special food – drink water only – go to school) on celebration days.



Language Functions

4

2 Read and complete the dialog:

breeze – ferry – seafood – Port Said

Mona: Hi Omar! How was your weekend?

Omar: It was great! We went to (1)..... and took the (2)..... to Port Fouad.

Mona: Nice! What did you do there?

Omar: We saw ships, felt the cool (3)....., and ate tasty (4).....

Mona: Sounds wonderful!



Vocabulary and Structures

4

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The cookies were fresh and (salty – crunchy – sour) not soft.
- 2 We (prepare – preparing – prepared) our school bags last night.
- 3 We bought a (bar – carton – kilo) of apples from the market.
- 4 When the lights went out, we used (candles – chair – birthday cake) to see in the dark.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 She don't play football yesterday. (.....)
- 2 I want to buy new shoes, so I don't have enough money. (.....)
- 3 Did you finishes your work? (.....)
- 4 My sister should does her homework. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

We should take care of our environment to keep it healthy. We can throw rubbish in bins, recycle paper and plastic, and plant trees. We should also save water and electricity and avoid polluting the air. Walking or riding a bike instead of using a car helps too. Everyone can help, and if we all do our part, the environment will stay clean and safe for people, animals, and plants.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 We should throw rubbish in bins to keep the environment dirty. (.....)
- 2 Using cars all the time is good for the air. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 We should (recycle – throw – burn) paper and plastic.
- 4 Walking or riding a bike helps (pollute – clean – save) the environment.
- 5 Saving water and electricity is (bad – helpful – useless) for the environment.



Writing

6 Write a short story of FOUR sentences about:

8

"Grandmother's house"

birthday – celebrate – hide-and-seek – decorate

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Malek likes to play (football – basketball – volleyball) in the park.
- 2 Malek drinks (milkshake – juice – soda) every morning.
- 3 He enjoys (running – sleeping all day – reading books) in his free time.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

sail – fisherman – boat – palm trees

Omar : Hi, Sara! What are you looking at?

Sara : Hi, Omar! I can see a (1)..... on the river.

Omar : Really? Is he in a (2)..... ?

Sara : Yes, and he is ready to (3).....

Omar : Wow! Look at the (4)..... along the riverbank. They are beautiful.



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 Yesterday, Noura (visit – visited – visiting) her grandmother.
- 2 Our teacher is (kind – play – swim) she always helps us.
- 3 Plastic in the ocean hurts (cars – sea animals – flowers).
- 4 (Do – Does – Did) she help her mother yesterday?

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 We walk to the park yesterday. (.....)
- 2 Can I have two slice of bread? (.....)
- 3 We should ate healthy food. (.....)
- 4 The boy is very sad because he won the game. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Hamza and Malek are in the garden. They see flowers and trees. They smell the flowers and hear the birds. Malek tastes a sweet fruit. Hamza touches a soft flower. They are happy. They use all their five senses to enjoy the garden and have a fun day.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Hamza and Malek see flowers in the garden. (.....)
- 2 Malek tastes a sweet fruit. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 They hear (cars – birds – TV) singing in the garden.
- 4 They smell (sand – water – flowers) in the garden.
- 5 Hamza and Malek use all their five (senses – toys – clothes) to enjoy the garden.



Writing

6 Write an e-mail of FOUR sentences to your friend about a day at the park. Your name is Ahmed, and your friend's name is Ali.

8

"A day at the park"

family – picnic – special – food

New Messages

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

We had a project at school. We learned that people in the desert live in tents. Life in the city is very busy. Every place has advantages and challenges. The project helped us understand how people adapted to their environment.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

I want to tell you about my trip. The weather was very hot. I saw tall green trees and some beautiful flowers. I felt happy and excited. It was a nice day. I had fun and I want to go again.

Test Yourself (1)

I went to my uncle's village last week. I felt happy and excited. I saw green trees and nice houses. The village is quiet and peaceful. But, in the city, the life is very busy. We had a lovely time there.

Test Yourself (2)

My name is Mona. I had a project at school. I wrote about the desert. I explained how people lived in tents, traveled on camels. The desert is always hot and there is no water, so the people used wells for water.

Al-Azhar Corner

I visited my granddad last week. The village is quiet and peaceful. I felt happy and excited. I saw green trees and animals. It was a lovely day with my grandfather.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Our teacher talked about the 3Rs. They are Reduce, Reuse, and Recycle. Reduce means using less water and electricity. Reuse means using things again, like bottles or bags. Recycle means turning old things into new ones. We should use the 3Rs to keep our planet clean.

Practice Lessons 4 and 5

Plants are very important for our planet. They give us clean air to breathe and make our world beautiful. Plants need sunlight, clean water, and good soil to grow strong. When we plant trees and flowers, we help nature stay healthy.

Test Yourself (1)

We can help our planet stay clean and healthy. We can use less paper and write on both sides of the page. Walking or riding a bike helps reduce pollution. We should use tote bags instead of plastic ones because plastic harms sea animals and nature.

Test Yourself (2)

Our Earth gives us important resources like water, electricity, and gas. We should use them wisely. We can save water by turning off the tap, save electricity by switching off lights, and never waste gas. Small actions make a big difference!

Al-Azhar Corner

We should take care of animals and plants. Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live. Plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil. Caring for them keeps our planet healthy and beautiful.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday, Kareem and Fatma prepared food packages for the poor people. They went to the market with their mother to buy everything they needed. The market was busy, full of sellers. After shopping, they knocked on doors and gave the families the food.

Practice on Lesson 2

I want to tell you how I prepared for the picnic. I bought a carton of milk for tea. My mother chose a bar of chocolate. There is a pack of biscuits on the table. We were ready to enjoy our picnic.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

Last week, Reem helped her mother in the kitchen. First, she washed her hands carefully. Her mother picked some cheese, and Reem washed the lettuce for the sandwiches. Together, they decided to add tomatoes to the salad.

Test Yourself (1)

Last week, Ali helped his mother in the kitchen. First, he washed his hands. Then, he placed the bread slices on the counter. His mother picked some cheese, Ali felt happy and excited at the end.

Test Yourself (2)

Last summer, Jana and her brother prepared food packages for the poor people in their neighborhood. Their father helped them. He bought everything they needed. Jana and her brother knocked on the doors and gave the poor families the food. The families were very happy and thanked them.

Al-Azhar Corner

I am going to tell you about our picnic. I bought a carton of milk for tea. My sister chose a bar of chocolate. There is a pack of biscuits on the table. We are ready to enjoy our picnic.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

There was a lovely family gathering. Everyone had a wonderful time together. Amr played a game of chess with Kareem, but Kareem won. Salma played hide-and-seek with her cousins, and they all had fun. They enjoyed eating delicious food like grilled chicken and cake. Salma's mother and grandmother cooked the chicken in the morning.

Test Yourself (1)

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. He decorated the room with colorful balloons and shiny ribbons. His family baked a delicious cake and helped him. Zein's friends came, played fun games, and everyone felt happy and excited.

Test Yourself (2)

Last year on May 1st, I celebrated Labor Day with my family. We watched a program about workers in Egypt, then we went to the park for a picnic. My brother played with balloons. It was a joyful and special day.

Al-Azhar Corner

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. There were colorful balloons hanging from the fences and shiny lights all around the place. A loud song played while the students wore their special clothes and smiled happily.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Oyoun Mousa is a beautiful place in South Sinai, Egypt. It has fresh water springs, tall palm trees, and quiet desert views. Visitors can take photos, meet bedouins, and learn about their traditional life. It is a natural wonder and a historical site.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

I am Ahmed. I went to Dahab with my family. I had a wonderful time at the Blue Hole. We went snorkeling. We saw many colorful fish and beautiful corals. The mountains around the pools make the place look amazing. I even spotted a big starfish.

Test Yourself (1)

Salma told Karima she spent her vacation in Dahab with her family. She went scuba diving, saw starfish, and snorkeled near corals. She also hiked in the mountains and rode horses by the beach. Karima said it sounded amazing and that she should visit Dahab, and Salma agreed.

Test Yourself (2)

Last weekend, my family and I went to Port Said early in the morning. We walked along the Corniche and watched ships near the Suez Canal while seagulls flew above us. Then we took the ferry to Port Fouad. We enjoyed the quiet streets, the cool breeze, and the beautiful sea view. Before going home, we ate tasty seafood. It was a joyful and memorable trip.

Al-Azhar Corner

Last month, my family and I went to Port Said. We walked along the Corniche and watched ships near the Suez Canal. Then, we took the ferry to Port Fouad and enjoyed the quiet streets and cool breeze. Before going home, we ate tasty seafood.

Test 1

Last Friday, Youssef went on a trip with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and took a small boat to enjoy the cool morning breeze. Youssef helped his grandfather sail along the calm, blue water. As they moved slowly across the river, he saw fishermen catching fish with their nets. It was a peaceful and exciting day.

Test 2

Last weekend, Ahmed and Omar visited a small village near the city. They walked by the river and enjoyed the fresh air and quiet streets. They saw tall trees, birds, and colorful flowers everywhere. A friendly farmer told them an interesting story about an oasis. Later, they bought fresh fruit from the market. Ahmed and Omar learned many new things and had a wonderful time.

Test 3

Last Friday, Amr went with his grandfather to the Nile River. They woke up early and sailed in a small boat along the calm water. Amr saw fishermen, farmers, tall palm trees, and children playing by the river. Later, they sat under a big tree, ate simple food, and his grandfather told him stories about the Nile. Amr felt happy and excited to visit again.

Test 4

Last Friday, Zein celebrated his birthday at home. In the morning, he woke up excited and began preparing for the big day. With his sister's help, he cleaned the living room and decorated it with colorful balloons. Later, they arranged the table with snacks and a big cake. Zein couldn't wait to welcome his friends for the party.

Test 5

We should take care of animals and plants to keep our planet healthy. Animals need food, water, and a safe place to live, so we must be kind and never harm them. Plants need sunlight, water, and clean soil to grow. We can help by planting trees and flowers and protecting nature. When we care for animals and plants, our world becomes a better place.

Test 6

On Monday, our school went to Al Azhar Park for a picnic. My group prepared a healthy lunch with tomatoes, cucumbers, peaches, and bananas. We also put milk and orange juice in a cooler with ice. Each student got bread with cheese, and we had biscuits and chocolate for dessert. After we ate, we packed extra food and gave it to students who could not come.

Test 7

One sunny day, Khalid went to the park with his red kite. The kite flew high in the sky, and Khalid smiled as he watched it. Suddenly, the string broke, and the kite flew away. Khalid ran after it, but he couldn't catch it. He felt a little sad, but he decided he would make a new kite the next day.

Test 8

Last Friday, Zein had a birthday party at his house. His friends came with gifts and colorful balloons. There was a big chocolate cake on the table. Everyone sang "Happy Birthday," and Zein blew out the candles. They played fun games, ate cake, and laughed together. It was a wonderful and special day for Zein.

Test 9

The school playground looked beautiful during the celebration. Colorful balloons hung from the fences, and shiny lights glowed all around the place. A loud, cheerful song played while the students wore their special clothes and smiled happily. Teachers and students clapped, laughed, and enjoyed the music together. Everyone felt excited and had a wonderful time.

Test 10

Last week, Ali helped his mother in the kitchen. First, he washed his hands carefully. Then, he placed the bread slices on the counter. His mother picked some cheese, and Ali helped her prepare a simple snack. He felt happy and excited at the end because he had done a good job.

Test 11

Salma spent her mid-year vacation in Dahab with her family. She went scuba diving and saw starfish and colorful corals under the water. She also enjoyed hiking in the mountains and horseback riding along the beach. Salma said the trip was wonderful and told her friend Karima that she should visit Dahab on her next vacation too.

Test 12

Last Friday, Youssef went with his grandfather to the Nile River. They took a small boat and sailed on the calm water. Youssef saw fishermen, farmers, and tall palm trees by the riverbank. They sat under a tree, ate simple food, and his grandfather told him stories about the Nile. Youssef felt happy and wanted to visit again soon.

Test 13

Last weekend, Noura and her mother prepared for a picnic. They packed milk, chocolate, biscuits, juice, bread, cheese, and apples. Noura helped her mother carefully with all the packing. It was a lot of work, but Noura felt happy to help and enjoyed preparing the food for the picnic.

Test 14

Some people live in a big city with tall buildings and busy streets. Others live in a small village near a river, where the air is clean and fresh. The desert is hot and dry, but it has its own beauty. We should protect our environment wherever we go to keep it safe and clean.

Test 15

On Friday, my family and I celebrate a special day. We invite relatives and socialize with friends. There is delicious food and a fun game for the children. My cousins perform a short song, and we give gifts to each other. Everyone enjoys it very much and has a wonderful time together.

Al-Azhar Tests

Test 1

The environment around us is full of different places. In the city, there are many buildings, cars, and people. The desert is hot and dry, but sometimes we can find an oasis with water and trees. In the forest, there are tall trees and wild animals, and a river flows gently through it.

Test 2

Last weekend, I went to my grandparents' village. The weather was sunny and nice. We went to the field near the river. There were many palm trees and tasty dates to eat. I flew my kite and had a happy day.

Test 3

Last Friday, my family met at my grandparents' house. My uncles, aunts, and cousins came too. We ate food, talked, and played games. Everyone was happy. I love my family.

Test 4

On celebration days, people do many fun things. They exchange gifts with family and friends. Some people perform music and sing together. Others play a game and eat special food. Everyone feels happy and enjoys the day.

Test 5

Malek is a friendly boy. He likes to play football with his friends in the park. Every morning, he eats a healthy breakfast and drinks juice. Malek also helps his parents at home and enjoys reading books in his free time. He is kind, happy, and always ready to help others.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (برجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 (Practice on Lesson 1)

"Different places in the environment"

(desert – village – city)

People live in different places. The desert is hot and dry. The village is quiet and simple. The city has tall buildings and transport for many people.

UNIT 1 (Practice on Lesson 3)

"A day by the Nile River"

(boat – sail – calm)

A day by the Nile River is very relaxing. I like to sail on a small boat. The water is always calm and peaceful. I enjoy watching the birds and the green trees along the river.

UNIT 1 Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"A trip to the village"

(exciting – trip – friends)

Last weekend, I had an exciting trip to the village. I went with my friends. We played games and explored the fields. Everyone enjoyed the fresh air and the beautiful views.

Test Yourself (1)

"Different places in the environment"

(oasis – village – city)

I learned about different places yesterday. An oasis has water in the desert. The village is quiet and sunny. The city is busy and full of people.

Test Yourself (2)

"Your trip to the Nile River"

(sail – calm – peaceful)

I had a trip to the Nile River yesterday. We sailed and enjoyed the view. The weather was calm. The sound of water made me feel peaceful.

Al-Azhar Corner

"Life in the city"

(different – building – buses – noise)

Life in the city is different. People live in different buildings. They use cars and buses to move. The city has a lot of noise and lights.

UNIT 2 Practice on Lesson 1

"The 3Rs to help the Earth"

(reduce – reuse – recycle)

Today we learn the 3Rs to help Earth. We should reduce waste and save water. We can reuse bottles at home. We recycle paper and plastic daily.

UNIT 2 Practice on Lesson 3

"Saving our resources"

(electricity – turn off – Earth)

We must save electricity every day. We turn off lights when leaving rooms. We also save water at home. Protecting the Earth keeps our environment healthy.

UNIT 2 Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"Taking care of animals and plants"

(sunlight – water – protect)

We must take care of animals and plants. Give animals food and water. Plants need sunlight and water. Let's protect them for a better Earth.

Test Yourself (1)

"Recycling at home"

(protect – bottle – paper)

Recycling at home helps protect our environment. We turn old paper into new sheets. Recycling bottles and plastic can help the Earth. Everyone should keep Earth clean.

Test Yourself (2)

"How to save water"

(taps – brush your teeth – environment)

We should save water every day. Turn off taps while you brush your teeth. Teach friends and family. Protecting water helps our environment stay clean and healthy.

Al-Azhar Corner

"Let's Go Green!"

(recycle – water – electricity – trees)

Let's go green to protect our planet. We should recycle and use water wisely. Saving electricity helps nature. Planting more trees keeps Earth clean every day.

UNIT 3 Practice on Lesson 2

"Shopping for a picnic"

(a bar of chocolate – a bottle of water – a pack of biscuits)

I prepared for the picnic with my brother. I took a bar of chocolate. My brother brought a bottle of water. We also packed a pack of biscuits.

UNIT 3 Practice on Lesson 3

"My school picnic"

(garden – share – dessert)

On Friday, our school had a picnic in the garden. Families brought baskets to share with everyone. We played games together. We enjoyed a pack of biscuits for dessert.

UNIT 3 Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"Helping your mother"

(lettuce – picked – washed)

I helped my mother last Friday. I placed the bread slices on the counter. I washed the lettuce. She picked some cheese.

Test Yourself (1)

"Shopping for a picnic"

(fruits – a bottle of orange juice – a pack of biscuits)

Last week, we had a picnic. My sister brought some fruits. My mother bought a bottle of orange juice. We ate a pack of biscuits for dessert.

Test Yourself (2)

"Sharing with families"

(prepared – market – needs)

We prepared food packages for the poor people. We went to the market with our mother. We talked with the families to learn about their needs. We were happy because we helped the poor.

Al-Azhar Corner

"School picnic"

(Al-Azhar Park – brought – arranged – dessert)

Our school held a picnic in Al-Azhar Park. Students brought baskets to share. We arranged vegetables and fruits. We opened a pack of biscuits for dessert.

UNIT 4 Practice on Lesson 1

"A family gathering"

(perform – game – gift)

Last weekend, we had a family gathering. My uncle performed music on his oud. We played a fun game together, and my aunt gave me a nice gift. It was a happy day with my family.

UNIT 4 Practice on Lesson 2

"A fun celebration"

(fireworks – cake – take photos)

We had a fun celebration at school. We shared a big cake. We took photos with friends. At night, fireworks lit up the sky beautifully.

UNIT 4 Practice on Lesson 3

"My birthday party"

(celebrate – cake – giveaways)

Last Friday, I celebrated my birthday at home. My mother made a big cake. I gave friends small giveaways. We all had fun together.

UNIT 4 Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“Celebrating Labor Day”

(special – event – appreciate)

On May 1st, we celebrate Labor Day. It is a special day. Our family joined a small event. We should appreciate workers' hard work.

Test Yourself (1)

“A happy family gathering”

(game – socialize – gifts)

Last weekend, we had a happy family gathering. We played a game of chess. The food was delicious. We exchanged gifts and socialized with friends and family all day.

Test Yourself (2)

“My birthday party”

(balloons – cake – songs)

Last Friday was my birthday. We decorated the room with colorful balloons. I blew out candles and ate a big cake. We sang happy songs together.

Al-Azhar Corner

“Your favorite celebration”

(balloons – ribbons – cake – gifts)

My favorite celebration is my birthday. We decorate the room with colorful balloons and ribbons. I eat a big cake. I receive lovely gifts from everyone.

UNIT 5 Practice on Lesson 1

“A day in the desert”

(bedouins – traditional life – tents)

I went to South Sinai with my family. We met local bedouins. They live in tents. We learned about the traditional life.

UNIT 5 Practice on Lesson 2

“Adventures in Dahab”

(snorkeling – hiking – horseback riding)

We went to Dahab. We went snorkeling. We saw corals. We also went hiking in the mountains and horseback riding by the beach.

UNIT 5 Practice on Lesson 3

“Port Said”

(trip – taking photos – ferry)

Last summer, I started a trip to Port Said. When we arrived, we walked along the Corniche. The visitors were taking photos. I took a ferry across the canal.

UNIT 5 Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"Blue Hole"

(Dahab – clear – snorkeling)

I had a wonderful time in Dahab. I visited the Blue Hole. The water is very clear. It's perfect for snorkeling.

Test Yourself (1)

"Fun outdoor activities"

(wonderful – hiking – horseback riding)

I love fun outdoor activities. I had a wonderful vacation in Dahab. I went hiking in the mountains and enjoyed horseback riding along the beach. I spent a beautiful day.

Test Yourself (2)

"My mid-year vacation"

(spent – scuba diving – star fish)

I spent my mid-year vacation in Dahab. I went scuba diving in the clear sea. I saw colorful corals and starfish. It was amazing.

Al-Azhar Corner

"A traditional day"

(South Sinai – bedouins – tents – learn)

I went to South Sinai. I met bedouins. They live in tents. The visitors learned about bedouins' traditional life.

Dictation Copybook

كراسة تسميع الكلمات



Unit 1

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	بيئة	.....	واحة
.....	مشروع	.....	يزرع
.....	المباني	.....	الخيام
.....	يتكيف	.....	الآبار
.....	مدينة	.....	قرية
.....	يربى	.....	يدرك
.....	مميزات	.....	التحديات

Lesson 2

.....	غابة	.....	مسافرون
.....	بجانب	.....	البائعين
.....	مزدحم	.....	هادئ
.....	طقس	.....	طريق

Lesson 3

.....	صياد	.....	بحر
.....	أشجار النخيل	.....	ضفة النهر
.....	قارب	.....	المحاصيل
.....	خيار	.....	مرة أخرى
.....	تاريخ	.....	رحلة

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	الحقول	.....	هادئ / مسالم
.....	صخور	.....	مسافة
.....	مستريح	.....	منظر
.....	الجبال	.....	مجري (نهر)

Unit 2

DICTATION



Lesson 1

يهدر	يعيد تدوير
نظيف	يقلل
بلاستيك	يعيد استخدام
كهرباء	كوكب
إعادة التعبئة	يطبق

Lesson 2

الطبيعة	صحي
حيوانات بحرية	كلا الجانبين
القمامة	خطاب ورق
سلة المهملات	تلوث
يذكر	صفحة
بيئة محيطة	حقائب القماش

Lesson 3

الغاز	موارد
دافئ	بحكمة
كوكب الأرض	مصايح - إضاءات
مروحة	حنفية

Lessons 4 & 5

تربة	قوى
يحمي	نباتات
مكان آمن	ضوء الشمس

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	حَى	.....	عبوات الطعام
.....	خضراوات	.....	كبير فى السن
.....	توصيل	.....	وعد
.....	يصعد السلم	.....	الخوخ
.....	سوق	.....	سيدة

Lesson 2

.....	علبة لبن	.....	قطعة جبن
.....	قطعة شوكولاتة	.....	كيلو من التفاح
.....	عبوة بسكويت	.....	زبدة
.....	زجاجة عصير برتقال	.....	تحلية
.....	شريحة خبز	.....	نزهة

Lesson 3

.....	حديقة الأزهر	.....	ملون
.....	ثلج	.....	مقرمش
.....	يشارك	.....	سلة
.....	طازج	.....	مدرس الرسم
.....	لامع	.....	قائد

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	منضدة المطبخ	.....	طبق
.....	خُس	.....	وجبة
.....	النظافة	.....	مستول
.....	أهمية	.....	ساندوتش

Unit 4

DICTATION



Lesson 1

لعبة الغميضة	تجمع عائلي
مذهل	يتبادل الهدايا
سلطة الفواكه	يعزف / يعرض الموسيقى
دجاج مشوي	يأكل طعامًا خاصًا
الشطرنج	يتواصل مع الأصدقاء

Lesson 2

ألعاب نارية	يرتدي ملابس خاصة
يلتقط الصور	احتفال
ساطع / مشرق	ساحة اللعب
ضخم	بالونات ملونة
بعناية	لا ينسى
فرقة موسيقية	سور
أضواء لامعة	يصفق

Lesson 3

يعلق شرائط لامعة	يخبز
ضحك	يصل
يزين	مبهج
يتمنى أمنية	الشموع
يعلق الهدايا	هدية
يحتفل	الضيوف
يطفئ	يستلم

Lessons 4 & 5

يقدّر	عيد العمال
جنود	مايو
شجاع	حدث



Lesson 1

.....	ينابيع المياه	.....	ممتع
.....	رحلة	.....	عيون موسى
.....	البدو	.....	الزوار
.....	الحياة التقليدية	.....	عجائب طبيعية
.....	الخيام	.....	تاريخ
.....	أشجار النخيل	.....	تراث

Lesson 2

.....	الغطس	.....	الغوص
.....	نجم البحر	.....	ركوب الخيل
.....	جولة على الأقدام	.....	الشعاب المرجانية
.....	إجازة	.....	مدينة ذهب
.....	الجبال	.....	مغامرات

Lesson 3

.....	بورسعيد	.....	الكورنيش
.....	السفن	.....	قناة السويس
.....	طيور النورس	.....	ضوضاء
.....	عبّارة / معدّية	.....	بور فؤاد
.....	نسيم	.....	المأكولات البحرية
.....	جولة	.....	لا يُنسى

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	حمامات سباحة	.....	الثقب الأزرق
.....	سحر	.....	لحظة



كودك الشخصي
خلف هذا الغلاف

استمتع برحلة تعليمية تفاعلية

- 1 **شاهد فيديوهات**
لفهم دروسك بشكل مُبسّط وسهل
كل ما عليك هو مسح رمز QR الموجود
بجوار «ذاكر» في بداية كل درس.
- 2 **التدريبات والاختبارات الإلكترونية**
لحل تدريبات واختبارات أكثر على كل درس..
امسح رمز QR الموجود بجوار «تدرب»
ببداية تدريبات كل درس.
- 3 **100% إجابات**
راجع إجاباتك من خلال مسح QR الخاص
بـ «100% إجابات» الموجود بالصفحة الأولى.



Inside The Book:

- Final Revision & Exams Booklet
- Your Personal Code

احرص على اقتناء الأضواء في:

- اللغة العربية
- الرياضيات
- الدراسات الاجتماعية
- العلوم
- التربية الإسلامية

معك الكتاب معك APP



نزل تطبيق الأضواء



16766



L.E.165



6 221133 000482